# On a Hardy space approach to the analysis of spectral factors* 

P. A. FUHRMANN $\dagger$ and A. GOMBANI $\ddagger$


#### Abstract

The paper presents a study of several problems related to spectral factorizations. We assume only a very weak form of coercivity for the $p \times p$ spectral function $\Phi$ and look at the set $w^{m}$ of all rectangular, $p \times m$ spectral factors. The main object is the arithmetization of the geometry of the set of minimal, stable spectral factors by employing Hardy space techniques and the arithmetic of inner functions. Particular attention is paid to the study of various partial orders associated with the set of spectral factors.


## 1. Introduction

The object of this paper is to present a study of the spectral factorization problem in the multivariable case. We will consider rational spectral function $\Phi$ of dimension $p \times p$, of rank $m_{0} \leq p$ and degree $2 n$ and we will characterize all the minimal, in the sense of the McMillan degree, spectral factors of a given size $p \times m$ in the spectral domain, removing all constraints on rank and zero location. In particular only very weak coercivity assumptions will be made.

The topic of this paper has a long history, with roots in stochastic theory. We mention Anderson (1973), Faurre et al. (1979), Ruckebusch (1980), and in particular the series of seminal articles of Lindquist and Picci (1979a-c, 1985a, 1991) and Lindquist et al. (1995) as well as some papers by Pavon which have been the main inspiration of our work. This problem has been widely studied in the existing literature, although a particular aspect of the problem seems to have escaped all these investigations and this was the motivation for starting this work. For example, it is well known how to characterize all the spectral factors in terms of a Riccati inequality [see Anderson (1973) and Faurre (1976)] nevertheless, a state space approach does not allow a precise characterization of the spectral factors of fixed dimension $m$ where the usual constraints ( $m_{0} \leq m \leq p+n$ ) are satisfied (these constraints come in a very natural manner from the Positive Real Lemma: we refer the reader to Anderson (1973) for details). In Lindquist and Picci (1979 c) an alternative spectral domain characterization is given for non-full-rank $\Phi$, but only for the internal case. In Lindquist et al. (1995) the external, but full-rank problem is treated. In conclusion, the sets of external factors of given size $m$ of a non-full-rank density $\Phi$ (which we will call $\mathcal{w}^{m}$ ) are not very well characterized even today. Some properties of these sets are known [for example it is known it is a manifold for each $m$, see Batatchart and Gombani (1994)] but the underlying structure of these sets was quite unclear. The reasons for understanding such a problem are quite practical and come from time series analysis and multichannel signal transmission. The first problem occurs in

[^0]econometrics, when a time series with a lot of variables should be explained in terms of the dynamics of few variables (factors) and some (white) disturbance error. The second occurs in decoding the signals which come to a cellular phone from all the antennas which are operating on that cell and are of course broadcasting also to other phones. It can be shown that both situations can be brought to a non-linear minimization problem on $w^{m}$ (and the non-full-rank assumption on $\Phi$ is crucial), and this explains why it is interesting to know that it is manifold and why, more generally, it is important to understand its structure. We do so in continuous time (even if the problems we just mentioned have a discrete time formulation), because of some simplified features of this setting. The discrete time version can be obtained by a suitable version of the Cayley transform.

With this problem in mind, we were led in a natural way to an approach which differs from that of Lindquist and Picci. Since we have removed the rank constraints we obtain some technical results which are more general than those previously obtained. The main difference however is one of emphasis. In the Lindquist-Picci approach to stochastic realization theory, geometry is reigning supreme. The approach is abstract with all the corresponding advantages and disadvantages. The first big advantage is that working with a space directly constructed from the stochastic process, stochastic objects like the past and future spaces are conceptually clearly defined and are independent of any representation. The disadvantages arise from the difficulties in the computational process: since every subspace has its own functional representation, the geometry of the stochastic setting is lost in the frequency domain. For better or worse, we do away with all that. The basic idea is to map the stochastic domain with a single isomorphism to the frequency domain. With each spectral factor we get corresponding representation spaces which are subspaces of a fixed vectorial $L^{2}$ space of the imaginary axis. For normalization purposes we single out the minimal, stable, maximum phase spectral factor $W_{+}$. We study all other spectral factors in terms of their relation to $W_{+}$. The big advantage from our point of view is that the functional representations of these spaces in terms of inner functions, obtained using Beurling's theorem, are all geometrically correlated (the Hilbert space structure is preserved). This allows us to replace the abstract geometrical constructs by the arithmetic properites of inner functions, making computations much easier. A second important feature of our approach that it solves the problem we considered in the beginning, namely the characterization of $w^{m}$.

The paper is structured as follows. We introduce some notation in $\S 2$. In $\S 3$, given a spectral function, we study the four minimal, extremal spectral factors. These factors are completely characterized by the requirement that all their zeros and poles lie in either the open left or right half-planes. Section 4 is devoted to a study of Toeplitz operators whose symbol is a quotient of inner function. This class of Toeplitz operators is important because of the many connections to geometry. For some different applications to system theoretic problems, see Fuhrmann and Helmke (1997).

In $\S 5$ we extend the scene by looking at the set of all minimal, stable rectangular spectral factors of a given size. Here the ground is laid for the use of factorization theory in the analysis of spectral factors. This is done via the use of the algebra of inner functions. The fine structure of the various factorizations associated with a given, stable spectral factor is analysed in Theorem 4. Since, via Beurling's theorem, inner functions are closely related to the geometry of invariant subspaces in Hardy spaces, this leads to many geometric relations. These connections are studied in
depth, as well as various associated projection operators. Some of this is summarized in Proposition 15. Special attention is given to two extreme cases, those of internal and external factors and characterizations of these factors are given. This study is closely related to geometric control theory, however the results obtained are beyond the scope of this paper. These results are relegated to future publications, see Gombani and Fuhrmann (1998) and Fuhrmann (1998).

We pass on, in $\S 6$, to the study of a functional representation of the set of all minimal Markovian splitting subspaces, a key element in stochastic realization theory. With each minimal, stable spectral factor we associate a canonical state space, which serves also as the state space of a shift based realization. This allows us to link the geometry of splitting subspaces with the arithmetic properties of inner functions. One of the principal themes is to study a partial order relation in the set of all minimal, stable spectral factors. We begin, in Theorem 8, by studying the standard case of square, non-singular spectral factors. While it does not generalize trivially to the singular, rectangular case, it indicates the direction. In keeping with the spirit of this paper, which is functional oriented, we avoid the use of the Riccati equation and inequality. This theme will be picked up in a different publication. Once the various partial orders, related to spectral factors, are introduced, we proceed to show the equivalence of these orders. This is the heart of this section and one of the principal results of the whole paper. This is summarized in Theorem 9. We proceed, in Theorem 10, to characterize, functionally, the various spaces that appear in the scattering approach to stochastic realization theory. We conclude by studying some lattice properties of the set of all $p \times m$ stable, spectral factors. We note however that this set is not a complete lattice. The set of all minimal Markovian splitting subspaces spans a canonical subspace of $H_{+}^{2}$. We give a characterization of this space in §7.

The reader who studies this paper will notice immediately that there are many important topics that have been omitted. In particular, little emphasis has been placed on state space techniques. Also, topics relating to geometric control theory, in the context of Hardy spaces, had to be avoided. The reason for this is simple. Inclusion of these topics, important as they are, would have been beyond the scope of a single paper. As indicated above, these topics will be treated in subsequent papers.

In a sense, the content of this paper is an attempt to understand stochastic realization theory in the style of Lindquist and Picci from a different point of view. Our debt to their work is evident throughout.

## 2. Preliminaries and notation

We work in the Hilbert space setting of the plane; we define, see Hoffman (1962), $L^{2}(\mathbb{I})$ to be the set of the vector or matrix valued (the proper dimension will be clear from the context) square integrable functions on the imaginary axis, and $H_{+}^{2}$ to be the subspace of $L^{2}$ of functions that are the boundary values of analytic functions in the right half-plane and such that

$$
\sup _{x>0} \frac{1}{2 \pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \operatorname{tr}\left[F^{*}(x+i y) F(x+i y)\right] \mathrm{d} y<\infty
$$

where ${ }^{*}$ denotes transposed conjugate. If $F$ and $G$ are column vectors, the inner product in $H_{+}^{2}$ is

$$
\langle F, G\rangle=\frac{1}{2 \pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} G^{*}(i \omega) F(i \omega) \mathrm{d} \omega
$$

Analogously, $H_{+}^{\infty}$ is the subspace of $L^{2}$ of functions analytic in the right half-plane and such that

$$
\sup _{\operatorname{Re} s>0}\|F(s)\|<\infty
$$

where $\|F(x+i y)\|$ denotes the usual matrix norm. $\left(H_{-}^{2}\right.$ and $H_{-}^{\infty}$ are defined similarly on the left half-plane).

Let $F$ be function of $L^{2}$ : we denote by $P_{+} F\left(P_{-} F\right)$ the orthogonal projection of $L^{2}$ onto $H_{+}^{2}\left(H_{-}^{2}\right)$.

A $p \times m$ matrix valued function $\hat{R} \in H_{+}^{2}$ is said to be $r_{\hat{R}} w_{\lambda}$ rigid if $\hat{R} \hat{R}^{*}=I_{p}$ (clearly this entails $p \leq m$ ). It is column rigid if $p \geq m$ and $\hat{R}^{*} \hat{R}=I_{m}$. A function $Q \in H_{+}^{\infty}$ is inner if it is square and $Q^{*} Q=Q Q^{*}=I$. It is well known that a column vector space $M$ in $H_{+}^{2}$ is invariant under multipication by $\mathrm{E}^{-i \omega t}$ for $t \geq 0$ if and only if it is of the form $M=Q H_{+}^{2}$ (Beurling's Theorem). Similarly, a row space $N$ is invariant if and only if it is of the form $N=H_{+}^{2} Q$. We set $H_{c}(Q):=\left\{Q H_{+}^{2}\right\}^{\perp}$ and $H_{r}(Q):=\left\{H_{+}^{2} Q\right\}^{\perp}$. Analogously, we define $\bar{H}_{c}\left(Q^{*}\right):=\left\{Q^{*} H_{-}^{2}\right\}^{H_{+}}$and $\bar{H}_{r}\left(Q^{*}\right):=\left\{H_{-}^{2} Q^{*}\right\}^{\perp}$, the orthogonal complement in these cases taken in $H_{-}^{2}$. Clearly, we have $P_{+} \mathrm{e}^{i \omega t} H_{c}(Q) \subset H_{c}(Q)$ and similarly for $H_{r}(Q)$. A full columnrank $p \times m$ rational matrix function $G$ in $H_{+}^{\infty}$ is said to be minimum-phase or outer (on the right) if rank $G(s)=m$ for $\operatorname{Re} s>0$. It is well known that a rational function $F$ in $H_{+}^{\infty}$ admits an outer inner factorization

$$
F=F_{0} Q
$$

This factorization is unique up to a unitary constant matrix. For any $W$ in $L^{2}$ or in $L^{\infty}$ we define $W^{*}(s):=\bar{W}(\bar{s})^{\mathrm{T}}$, where ${ }^{-}$denotes conjugation and ${ }^{\mathrm{T}}$ denotes transposition. It should be noted that for an inner function $Q^{*}=Q^{-1}$.

We say that an inner function $Q_{1}$ divides $Q_{2}$ on the right (left) if $Q_{1}^{*} Q_{2} \in H_{+}^{\infty}$ $\left(Q_{2} Q_{1}^{*} \in H_{+}^{\infty}\right)$. Given two inner functions $Q_{1}$ and $Q_{2}$ we denote the greatest common right (left) divisor by $Q_{1} \wedge_{R} Q_{2}\left(Q_{1} \wedge_{L} Q_{2}\right)$ and the least common right (left) multiple by $Q_{1} \vee_{R} Q_{2}\left(Q_{1} \vee_{L} Q_{2}\right)$. Two inner matrices are right (left) coprime if their greatest common right (left) divisor is the identity.

Two $m \times m$ inner matrix $X$ and $Y$ are equivalent if there exist inner matrices $U, V$ such that $X \wedge_{L} V=I$ and $Y \wedge_{R} U=I$ and $X U=V Y$. Given an inner matrix $X$, it can be shown that there exists an (essentially) unique diagonal inner matrix $D=\operatorname{diag}\left\{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{m}\right\}$ such that $d_{i} \mid d_{i+i}$ for $i=1, \ldots, m-1$ which is similar to $X$. The inner factors $d_{i}$ which are not identically 1 are called invariant factors of $X$.

Remark: To distinguish between operators on row and column spaces, we will denote the operations on columns in the usual manner, whereas operations on row spaces are denoted by writing the argument before the operator. For example, given an operator $T$ acting in a row space $X$ with a subspace $V$, we would write $V \mid T$ for the restriction of $T$ to $V$. Ker $V \mid T$ would denote the kernel of this map. This notation is immediately applied in the following definition.
Definition 1: Let $G$ be a $p \times m$ matrix function in $L^{\infty}$. We define the Hankel operator $H_{G}^{c}$ acting on the column Hardy space as

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
H_{G}^{c}: H_{+}^{2} & \rightarrow H_{-}^{2}  \tag{1}\\
f & \mapsto P_{+} G f
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Similarly, we define the Hankel operator $H_{G}^{r}$ acting on row Hardy space by

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
H_{G}^{r}: H_{+}^{2} & \rightarrow H_{-}^{2}  \tag{2}\\
f & \mapsto f G P_{+}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

The function $G$ is called the symbol of the Hankel operator. Similarly, conjugate Hankel operators are defined, with the role of $H_{+}^{2}$ and $H_{-}^{2}$ interchanged. We will use the notation $\hat{H}_{G}^{r}$ and $\hat{H}_{G}^{c}$ for these operators.

From now on we assume all the functions to be rational. We denote a realization of a rational function $W$ as

$$
\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
A & B \\
\hline C & D
\end{array}\right)
$$

With $A^{\#}$ we denote the Moore-Penrose inverse of a matrix $A$.

## 3. Extremal spectral factors

Our object is to study the set of all minimal, not necessarily square, spectral factors of a given spectral function.

We assume we are given a rational spectral function $\Phi$, that is a $p \times p$ proper rational matrix function which is non-negative on the imaginary axis. We do not assume, as is usual, that $\Phi$ is regular on the imaginary axis. We do assume however that it is weakly coercive, namely that $\Phi$ has constant rank, $m_{0} \leq p$, on the extended imaginary axis, i.e. including at the point of infinity. Furthermore, we assume that $\Phi$, which clearly satisfies $\Phi(s)=\Phi(-\bar{s})^{*}$, has McMillan degree $2 n$.

A $p \times m$ proper rational matrix function $W$ is called a spectral factor if $\Phi=W W^{*}$. Here, as elsewhere $W^{*}(s)=W(-\bar{s})^{*}$. A spectral factor $W$ is called stable (antistable) if $W \in H_{+}^{\infty}\left(W \in H_{-}^{\infty}\right)$.

It turns out that the study of the set of minimal spectral factors is facilitated if we study it in relation to four extremal spectral factors. These four spectral factors are determined by the requirement that all their poles are located in either the left or right half-planes, and the same for the zeros.

It is well known that spectral factors exist. Moreover, using the Beurling-Lax-Halmos theorem, there exists a stable, minimum phase, or outer spectral factor, which we denote by $W_{-}$. Our weak coercivity assumption implies actually that $W_{-}$is left invertible over $H_{+}^{\infty}$. In a completely analogous way, there exists an essentially unique antistable and maximum phase spectral factor $W_{+}$, which has also dimension $p \times m_{0}$. By the same argument as before $\bar{W}_{+}$has an antistable left inverse.

Let $K_{+}$and $K_{-}$be the minimal essentially unique, that is unique up to a right constant unitary factor, $m_{0} \times m_{0}$ inner functions for which $W_{+}=\bar{W}_{+} K_{+}$is stable and $\bar{W}_{-}=W_{-} K_{-}^{*}$ is antistable. $\bar{W}_{-}$is the minimal, antistable minimum phase spectral factor and $W_{+}$is the minimal, stable maximum phase spectral factor, and the above factorizations are just the Douglas, Shapiro, Shields (DSS) factorizations of $W_{+}$and $\bar{W}_{-}$over $H_{-}^{\infty}$ and $H_{+}^{\infty}$ respectively. For more on this see Fuhrmann (1981).

We will assume in the following that the multiplicity of $K_{+}$equals $m_{0}$. This basically means that if

$$
W_{-}=\left(\begin{array}{l|l}
A & B_{-} \\
\hline C & D_{-}
\end{array}\right)
$$

then rank $B_{-}=m_{0}$. In other words, if we seek decompositions of the form $\Phi=\hat{\Phi}+\Delta$ with $\Delta$ constant and $\Phi$ of rank lower than $m_{0}$, we rule out that the problem has trivial solutions, namely those given by internal spectral factors. For more on this, see Baratchart and Gombani (1994).

Proposition 1: Let $W$ be a minimal, stable $p \times m$ spectral factor. Then there exists an essentially unique $m_{0} \times m$ row rigid function $\hat{Q}$ for which

$$
\begin{equation*}
W=W_{-} \hat{Q} \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Without loss of generality, we will assume $\hat{Q}(\infty)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}I & 0\end{array}\right)$.
Proof: We consider $H_{+}^{2} W$ which is an invariant subspace. Since rank $W=m_{0}$ then, by Beurling's theorem, there exists a rigid function $\hat{Q}$ for which

$$
H_{+}^{2} W=H_{+}^{2} \hat{Q}
$$

Since $W_{-}$is outer, it follows that

$$
H_{+}^{2} W=H_{+}^{2} \hat{Q}=H_{+}^{2} W_{-} \hat{Q}
$$

This implies $W=W_{-} \hat{Q}$.
The following proposition gives a characterization of the image of all Hankel operators induced by minimal, stable, not necessarily square, spectral factors.

Proposition 2: Let $W_{-}$be the minimal, stable, minimum phase, spectral factor of a rational spectral function. Let $W$ be any minimal, stable, not necessarily square, spectral factor. Let $\hat{H}_{W}^{c}: H_{-}^{2} \rightarrow H_{+}^{2}$ be the associated conjugate Hankel operator. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W}^{c}=\operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W^{c}} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W_{+}}^{c}=\operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W_{-}}^{c} \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$

(2) Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{-}=K H_{-}^{*}=\left(K^{*}\right)^{-1} H_{-}^{*} \tag{6}
\end{equation*}
$$

be a right coprime DSS factorization of $W_{-}$over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Let $W$ be any stable, minimal spectral factor. Then it has a right coprime DSS factorization of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
W=K H^{*} \tag{7}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Proof:

(1) Let $W$ be any minimal, stable, not necessarily square, spectral factor. We know, by Proposition 1, that there exists a row-rigid function $Q$ such that $W=W_{-} \hat{Q}$ or, equivalently, that $W_{-}=W \hat{Q}^{*}$. By Lemma 3.5.7 in Fuhrmann (1981), we conclude that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W_{-}}^{c} \subset \operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W}^{c} \tag{8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now $\operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W}^{c}$ can be taken, using the shift realization, as the state space of a minimal realization. Since $W$ is, by assumption, a minimal spectral factor we have $\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W_{-}}^{c}=\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W}^{c}$. Thus (4) follows. Equality (5) is a special case.
(2) We have $\operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W}^{c}=\left\{K H_{+}^{2}\right\}^{\perp}$. Since $\operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W}^{c}=\hat{H}_{W_{-}}^{c}$, this implies a factorization, necessarily left coprime, of the form (7).

Equality (4) has practical implications for the realization of minimal spectral factors.

Corollary 1: Let

$$
W_{-}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
A & B_{-}  \tag{9}\\
\hline C & D_{-}
\end{array}\right)
$$

the realization being minimal and let $W$ be any, not necessarily square, minimal stable spectral factor. Then $W$ has a minimal realization of the form

$$
W=\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
A & B  \tag{10}\\
\hline C & D
\end{array}\right)
$$

Proof: We consider the shift realization, see Fuhrmann (1981, 1995), based on the left coprime factorizations (6) and (7). Since the ( $C, A$ ) operators in such a realization depend only on the inner function $Q$, the result follows. That (10) is a minimal realization follows from the minimality of $W$.

It might be tempting to use the previous result to try and study the set of all minimal, stable, spectral factors of given size by using the realizations with the same state space. This is not necessarily a good idea. In fact the main contribution of this paper comes from following very different route, as will become apparent in $\S 6$.
Proposition 3: Let $W_{+}$be the minimal, stable, maximum phase, spectral factor. If $S$ is any non-trivial row rigid function, i.e. $S S^{*}=I$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta\left(W_{+} S\right)>\delta\left(W_{+}\right) \tag{11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof: Since $W_{+} S$ is a stable spectral factor, and $W_{+}=\left(W_{+} S\right) S^{*}$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W_{+} S}^{c} \supset \operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W_{+}}^{c} \tag{12}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\delta\left(W_{+} S\right)=\delta\left(W_{+}\right)$then necessarily $\operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W_{+} S}^{c}=\operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{+}^{c}$. By Proposition 1, there exist $H^{\infty}$ functions $R, T$ such that

$$
W_{+} S=W_{+} R^{*}+T^{*}
$$

Now $W_{+}$has an antistable left inverse $W^{-L}$, so $S=R^{*}+W^{-L} T^{*}$. Thus $S$ is both in $H_{+}^{\infty}$ and in $H_{-}^{\infty}$ hence necessarily a constant coisometry, contrary to our assumption that $S$ is non-trivial.

We proceed to derive a characterization of $W_{+}$which is analogous to Propositon 1. For this we will need the following proposition.

Proposition 4: Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{1}^{-1} H_{1}=H K^{-1} \tag{13}
\end{equation*}
$$

be coprime DSS factorizations over $H_{+}^{\infty}$. Then if $H_{1}$ is outer, so is $H$.
Proof: We prove it by contradiction. Assume $H=E \bar{H}$ with $E$ non-trivial. Let

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Y_{1} & -X_{1} \\
-H_{1} & K_{1}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
K & X \\
H & Y
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

be a doubly coprime factorization. This implies also

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
K & X \\
H & Y
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Y_{1} & -X_{1} \\
-H_{1} & K_{1}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

In particular we get $H Y_{1}=Y H_{1}$ and hence $E \bar{H} Y_{1}=Y H_{1}$, which can be rewritten as $\bar{H} Y_{1}=E^{-1} Y H_{1}$. Now $E, Y$ are left coprime as $H, Y$ are. Let $\hat{Y} \hat{E}^{-1}$ be a right coprime factorization of $E^{-1} Y$. So

$$
\bar{H} Y_{1}=E^{-1} Y H_{1}=\hat{Y} \hat{E}^{-1} H_{1}
$$

Now the right coprimeness of $\hat{Y}, \hat{E}$ implies the existence of $H^{\infty}$ functions $P, Q$ which solve the following Bezout identity

$$
\begin{equation*}
P \hat{Y}+Q \hat{E}=I \tag{14}
\end{equation*}
$$

This implies $P \hat{Y} \hat{E}^{-1} H_{1}+Q H_{1}=\hat{E}^{-1} H_{1}$. Now $L=P \hat{Y} \hat{E}^{-1} H_{1}+Q H_{1}=P \bar{H} Y_{1}+$ $Q H_{1}$ is clearly in $H^{\infty}$, so $H_{1}=\hat{E} L$ contradicting the outerness of $H_{1}$.
Proposition 5: Let $W_{+}$be the minimal, stable, maximum phase, spectral factor. Let $W_{+}=K H_{+}^{*}$ be a left coprime DSS factorization over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Then $H_{+}$is outer .
Proof: Let $\bar{W}_{+}$be the minimal, maximum phase antistable spectral factor. Thus, in analogy to $W_{-}, \bar{W}_{+}$is conjugate outer, i.e. left invertible in $H_{--}^{\infty}$. Let $W_{+}$be the minimal, maximum phase stable spectral factor. We have $W_{+}=\bar{W}_{+} K_{+}=\bar{W}_{+} K_{+}^{-}$, which is a right coprime DSS factorization over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Let $W_{+}=K^{*} H_{+}^{*}$ be a left coprime factorization of $W_{+}$over $H_{-}^{\infty}$.

Now, by construction, $\bar{W}_{+}$is outer in $H_{-}^{\infty}$, i.e. it is left invertible over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Applying Proposition 4 in its $H_{-}^{\infty}$ version, we conclude that $H_{+}^{*}$ is left invertible in $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Equivalently, $H_{+}$is right invertible in $H_{+}^{\infty}$, or it is row outer.

We proceed with the characterization of $W_{+}$.
Proposition 6: Let $W$ be any minimal, stable not necessarily square spectral factor. Then there exists an $m \times m_{0}$ column rigid function $\hat{Q} ״$ for which $W \hat{Q} \xlongequal{\prime \prime}=W_{+}$.
Proof: Let $W_{+}=K H_{+}^{*}$ and $W=K H^{*}$ be right coprime DSS factorizations. Since both $W$ and $W_{+}$are spectral factors, we obtain

$$
H^{*} H=H_{+}^{*} H_{+}
$$

Applying Proposition 1 in its $H_{-}^{\infty}$ form, we infer the existence of a row rigid function $\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*} \in H_{-}^{\infty}$, that is satisfying $\left(\hat{Q}^{\prime \prime *} Q^{\prime \prime}=I\right.$, for which $H^{*}=H_{+}^{*}\left(\hat{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*}$. This implies

$$
W=K H^{*}=K H_{+}^{*}\left(\hat{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*}=W_{+}\left(\hat{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*}
$$

and hence $W_{+}=W \hat{Q}^{\prime \prime}$.
Proposition 7: There exist unique, $m_{0} \times m_{0}$ square inner functions $Q$ - and $Q_{+}$for which

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
W_{+}=W_{-} Q_{+}  \tag{15}\\
\bar{W}_{+}=\bar{W}_{-} Q_{-}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Moreover, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{-} Q_{+}=Q_{-} K_{+} \tag{16}
\end{equation*}
$$

$Q_{+}, K_{+}$are right coprime and $Q_{-}, K_{-}$are left coprime.
Proof: $W_{-}, \bar{W}_{+}$are both of dimension $p \times m_{0}$. Since $\bar{W}_{-}=W_{-} K_{-}^{*}$ and $W_{+}=$ $\bar{W}_{+} K_{+}$with $K_{-}, K_{+}$inner of dimension $m_{0} \times m_{0}$, it follows that $W_{+}, \bar{W}_{-}$are also of dimension $p \times m_{0}$. By Proposition 1, there exists an $m_{0} \times m_{0}$ rigid, hence inner, function $Q_{+}$such that $W_{+}=W_{-} Q_{+}$. We easily compute that

$$
W_{+}=\bar{W}_{-} K_{-} Q_{+}=\bar{W}_{-} Q_{-} K_{+}
$$

The left invertibility of $\bar{W}_{-}$implies (16).
That $Q_{+}$and $K_{+}$are right coprime follows from the fact that $K_{+}$is the minimal inner function for which $W_{+} K_{+}$is stable. The second assertion is proved similarly.

A non-trivial right common factor for $Q_{+}, K_{+}$would contradict the fact that $\bar{W}_{+}=W_{+} K_{+}^{*}$ is a right coprime DSS factorization over $H_{+}^{\infty}$. Similarly, for the left coprimeness of $Q_{-}$and $K$.

It is convenient to arrange the four spectral factors as in figure 1.
To get some intuition into the role of the inner functions $Q_{ \pm}, K_{ \pm}$, we recall that one convenient way to describe zeros and poles of rational functions is in terms of polynomial coprime factorizations.

Consider the minimal stable, mininum phase $p \times m_{0}$ spectral factor $W_{-}$. If we consider a polynomial left coprime factorization, then $\underline{W}_{-}=\bar{D}_{-}^{-1} \bar{E}_{-}$. Here $\bar{D}-$ is a $p \times p$ stable non-singular polynomial matrix, whereas $\bar{E}_{-}$is a $p \times m_{0}$ polynomial matrix all whose invariant factors are stable polynomials. The $p \times m_{0}$ numerator


Figure 1.
polynomial matrix admits a factorization $E E$. with $E$ a $p \times m_{0}$ polynomially left invertible matrix and $E$ - stable. Solving the polynomial spectral factorization problem

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{-} E_{-}^{*}=F_{+} F_{+}^{*} \tag{17}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $F_{+}$antistable and $E_{-}^{-1} F_{+}$biproper, we conclude that $Q_{+}=E_{-}^{-1} F_{+}$is an $m_{0} \times m_{0}$ inner function and

$$
W_{-} Q_{+}=\bar{D}_{-}^{-1} \bar{E}_{-}\left(E_{-}^{-1} F_{+}\right)=\bar{D}_{-}^{-1} E E_{-}\left(E_{-}^{-1} F_{+}\right)=\bar{D}_{-}^{-1}\left(E F_{+}\right)
$$

Obviously all the invariant factors of $E F_{+}$are antistable. So $W_{-} Q_{+}=W_{+}$, where $W_{+}$is the minimal stable maximum phase spectral factor.

Thus, the inner function $Q_{+}$describes the flipping of zeros from the open left half plane to the open right half plane. Given a factorization $Q_{+}=Q_{1} Q_{2}$ into square inner factors, the left factor $Q_{1}$ describes the set of all zeros of $W_{-}$flipped to the right half plane by $Q_{1}$, i.e. the set of antistable zeros of the spectral factor $W_{-} Q_{1}$. Similarly, the right factor $Q_{2}$ of $Q_{+}$describes the set of stable zeros of $W=W_{-} Q_{1}=W_{+} Q_{2}^{*}$ that remain to be flipped. The sets of zeros of this type are called internal zeros and the corresponding spectral factors are called internal spectral factors. We will discuss their role in more detail in $\S 5$.

As usual, we define the phase function $T_{0}$ corresponding to the spectral functon $\Phi$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{0}=\bar{W}_{+}^{L} W_{-} \tag{18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, since $\bar{W}_{+}$is a $p \times m_{0}$ function which has full column rank on the extended imaginary axis, $\bar{W}_{+}^{L}{ }^{L}$ denotes any left inverse. The phase function is an $m_{0} \times m_{0}$ allpass function. It plays an important role in understanding the set of all minimal spectral factors.

The next lemma relates the inner functions $K_{ \pm}, Q_{ \pm}$to the phase function.
Lemma 1: Let $W_{-}, W_{+}, \bar{W}_{-}, \bar{W}_{+}$be the extremal spectral factors corresponding to the spectral function $\Phi$ and let $T_{0}$ be the associated phase function. Then we have

$$
\begin{align*}
\bar{W}_{+} \bar{W}_{+}^{L} W_{+} & =W_{+}  \tag{19}\\
\bar{W}_{+} \bar{W}_{+}^{L} W_{-} & =W_{-}  \tag{20}\\
W_{+} W_{+}^{L} W_{-} & =W_{-}  \tag{21}\\
T_{0}=\bar{W}_{+}^{L} W_{-}=K_{+} Q_{+}^{-1} & =Q_{-}^{-1} K_{-} \tag{22}
\end{align*}
$$

Proof: Since $\bar{W}_{+}^{-}{ }^{L} \bar{W}_{+}=I$, we have $\bar{W}_{+} \bar{W}_{+}^{-}{ }^{L} \bar{W}_{+}=\bar{W}_{+}$. Now

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{W}_{+} \bar{W}_{+}^{-}{ }^{L} W_{+}=\bar{W}_{+} \bar{W}_{+}^{-}{ }^{L} \bar{W}_{+} K_{+} \bar{W}_{+} K_{+}=W_{+} \tag{23}
\end{equation*}
$$

This proves (19). (20) follows, using the fact that $W_{-} Q_{+}=W_{+}$. Substituting $W_{+}=W_{-} Q_{+}$in the equality $W_{+} W_{+}^{L^{L}} W_{+}=W_{+}$and eliminating $Q_{+}$leads to (21). Finally, using (21), we compute

$$
T_{0}=\bar{W}_{+}^{-L} W_{-}=\bar{W}_{+}^{L}\left(W_{+} W_{+}^{-}{ }^{L} W_{-}\right)=\left(\bar{W}_{+}^{-}{ }^{L} W_{+}\right)\left(W_{+}^{L}{ }^{L} W_{-}\right)=K_{+} Q_{+}^{-1}
$$

That $K_{+} Q_{+}^{-1}=Q_{-}^{-1} K$. was proved in (16).
As a result of this lemma, it is clear that the phase function is inner if and only if $Q_{ \pm}=I$, i.e. if and only if there are no internal zeros. The principal difference from


Figure 2.
the regular case is that the degrees of the determinants of $Q_{+}$and $K_{+}$are no longer necessarily equal. This difference manifests itself geometrically, as well as in the invertibility properties of Toeplitz operators. This will be studied in $\S 4$. The phase function is a powerful tool for the analysis of spectral factors. It turns out that for a finer analysis we need localized versions of the phase function corresponding to ordered pairs of internal spectral factors. We postpone the introduction of these functions until, in $\S 5$, we have constructed the right notation for it.

We will find it convenient to deal with square inner_functions. To this end we define the extended, extremal spectral factors, $W_{-}^{e}, W_{+}^{e}, \bar{W}_{-}^{e}, \bar{W}_{+}^{e}$, as the $p \times p$ matrix functions which are obtained by augmenting with $p-m_{0}$ zero columns. For example $W_{-}^{e}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}W_{-} & 0\end{array}\right)$. Similarly, we extend the inner functions $Q_{ \pm}, K_{ \pm}$in an obvious way to $m \times m$ inner functions by letting

$$
Q_{ \pm}^{e}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{ \pm} & 0  \tag{24}\\
0 & I
\end{array}\right), \quad K_{ \pm}^{e}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
K_{ \pm} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

Clearly, we obtain the commutativity of figure 2.
The previous coprimeness conditions extend also in a natural way to the extended inner functions. Thus $Q_{+}^{e}, K_{+}^{e}$ are right coprime and $Q_{-}^{e}, K_{-}^{e}$ are left coprime.

## 4. On Toeplitz operators

In this section we will turn our attention to a study of the phase function and some Toeplitz operators related to it. The invertibility of Toeplitz operators has both goemetric and arithmetic characterizations. By arithmetic characterizations we refer to Wiener-Hopf factorizations and the corresponding factorization indices, whereas the geometry refers to the invariant and coinvariant subspaces of Hardy spaces.

We recall the definition of Toeplitz operators. As we are working with both row and column spaces we must distinguish between two types of Toeplitz operators.
Definition 2: Let $G$ be an $m \times m$ matrix function in $L^{\infty}$. We define the Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}$ acting on column Hardy space by

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}: H_{+}^{2} & \rightarrow H_{+}^{2}  \tag{25}\\
f & \mapsto p_{+} G f
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Similarly, we define the Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{r}$ acting on row Hardy space by

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}: H_{+}^{2} & \rightarrow H_{+}^{2}  \tag{26}\\
f & \mapsto f G P_{+}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

In both cases $G$ is called the symbol of the corresponding Toeplitz operator.
The adjoints of Toeplitz operators are also Toeplitz operators. In fact we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(\mathcal{T}_{G}^{r}\right)^{*}=\mathcal{T}_{G^{*}}^{r} \\
& \left(\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}\right)^{*}=\mathcal{T}_{G^{*}}^{c}
\end{aligned}
$$

We say that

$$
\begin{equation*}
G=G_{-} \Delta_{r} G_{+} \tag{27}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a right Wiener-Hopf factorization if $G_{-}^{ \pm 1} \in H_{-}^{\infty}, G_{+}^{ \pm 1} \in H_{+}^{\infty}$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta_{r}(s)=\operatorname{diag}\left[\left(\frac{s-1}{s+1}\right)^{\kappa_{1}}, \ldots,\left(\frac{s-1}{s+1}\right)^{\kappa_{m}}\right] \tag{28}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\kappa_{1} \geq \cdots \geq \kappa_{m}$. The indices $\kappa_{1}, \ldots, \kappa_{m}$ are called the right Wiener-Hopf factorization indices. Left factorizations and left factorization indices are similarly defined.

It is well known that if $G \in L^{\infty}$ is continuous, and in particular if it is rational, then Wiener-Hopf factorization exist and the factorization indices, though not necessarily the factorizations, are uniquely defined.
Proposition 8: Let $G \in L^{\infty}$ and $G=G_{-} \Delta_{r} G_{+}$its right Wiener-Hopf factorization. Then
(1) The following statements are equivalent.
(a) The Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}$ is injective.
(b) The Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{\Delta_{r}}^{c}$ is injective.
(c) $\Delta_{r}$ is full column rank and all the right Wiener-Hopf factorization indices are non-negative.
(2) The following statements are equivalent.
(a) The Toeplitz operator $\tau_{G}^{c}$ is surjective.
(b) The Toeplitz operators $\mathcal{T}_{\Delta_{r}}^{c}$ is surjective.
(c) $\Delta_{r}$ is full row rank and all the right Wiener-Hopf factorization indices are non-positive.

Proof: The maps $\mathcal{T}_{G_{-}}^{c}, \mathcal{T}_{G_{-}^{-1}}^{c}, \mathcal{T}_{G_{+}}^{c}, \mathcal{T}_{G_{+}^{-1}}^{c}$ are all invertible. In fact $\left(\mathcal{T}_{G_{-}}^{c}=\mathcal{T}_{G_{-}^{-1}}^{c}\right.$ and $\left(\mathcal{T}_{G_{+}}^{c}\right)^{-1}=\mathcal{\tau}_{G_{+}^{-1}}^{c}$. Clearly we have the commutative diagram (figure 3) as


Figure 3.

$$
\mathcal{T}_{G_{-}}^{c} \mathcal{\tau}_{\Delta_{r}}^{c} \mathcal{T}_{G_{+}}^{c} f=P_{+} G_{-} P_{+} \Delta_{r} G_{+} f=P_{+} G_{-} \Delta_{r} G_{+} f=\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c} f
$$

In particular this shows that $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}$ is injective if and only if $\mathcal{T}_{\Delta_{r}}^{c}$ is injective. Now, if $\Delta_{r}$ is given by (28), then clearly

$$
\mathcal{T}_{\Delta_{r}}^{c}=\mathcal{T}_{\left(\frac{s-1}{s+1}\right)^{\kappa_{1}}} \oplus \cdots \oplus \mathcal{T}_{\left(\frac{s-1}{s+1}\right)^{\kappa_{m}}}
$$

So it suffices to analyse a Toeplitz operator of the form $\mathcal{T}\left(\frac{s-1}{s+1}\right)^{\kappa}$ operating on the scalar $H_{+}^{2}$ space. Since $s-1 / s+1$ is inner, we have for $\kappa \geq 0$ that $\mathcal{T}\left(\frac{s-1}{s+1}\right)^{\kappa}$ is isometric and hence injective. The codimension of the image is equal to $\kappa$. For $\kappa \leq 0$ the operator $\mathcal{T}\left(\frac{s-1}{s+1}\right)^{\kappa}$ is surjective and the dimension of the kernel is $\kappa$. In fact we have

$$
\operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}\left(\frac{s-1}{s+1}\right)^{\kappa}=\left\{\left(\frac{s-1}{s+1}\right)^{-\kappa} H_{+}^{2}\right\}^{\perp}
$$

This implies

$$
\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}\left(\frac{s-1}{s+1}\right)^{\kappa}=-\kappa
$$

Going back to the operator $\mathcal{T}_{\Delta_{r}}^{c}$ we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}_{\Delta_{r}}^{c} & =-\sum_{\kappa_{i}<0} \kappa_{i} \\
\operatorname{codim} \operatorname{Im} \mathcal{T}_{\Delta_{r}}^{c} & =-\sum_{\kappa_{i}>0} \kappa_{i}
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus injectivity is equivalent to all the right Wiener-Hopf indices being non-negative and surjectivity to all the right Wiener-Hopf indices being non-positive.

In view of the preceeding proposition, the following corollary is obvious.

## Corollary 2:

(1) The Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}$ is invertible if and only if $G$ is invertible and all the right Wiener-Hopf factorization indices are trivial.
(2) The Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{r}$ is invertible if and only if $G$ is invertible and all the left Wiener-Hopf factorization indices are trivial.
The following proposition connects invertibility properties of Toeplitz operators acting in row and column Hardy spaces.
Proposition 9: Let $G \in L^{\infty}$ be rational. Then
(1) The Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}$ is injective if and only if $\mathcal{T}_{G^{*}}^{r}$ is surjective.
(2) The Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}$ is surjective if and only if $\mathcal{T}_{G^{*}}^{r}$ is injective.
(3) The Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}$ is injective if and only if $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{r}$ is injective.

## Proof:

(1) Let $G=G_{-} \Delta_{r} G_{+}$be a right Wiener-Hopf factorization. Then $G^{*}=G_{+}^{*} \Delta_{r}^{*} G_{-}^{*}$ is a left Wiener-Hopf factorization of $G^{*}$. The factorization indices of $G$ are all non-negative if and only if the factorization indices of $G^{*}$ are all nonpositive.
(2) The proof is similar.
(3) Since $\left(\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}\right)^{*}=\mathcal{T}_{G^{*}}^{c}, \mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}$ is injective if and only if $\mathcal{T}_{G^{*}}^{r}$ is surjective. By part (2) this is the case if and only if $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{r}$ is injective.

Note that, if $G=G_{-} \Delta_{r} G_{+}$is a right Wiener-Hopf factorization with non-negative factorization indices, then we have an explicit formula for the left inverse of $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}$, namely

$$
\left(\mathcal{T}_{G}^{c}\right)^{-L} g=G_{+}^{-1} P_{+} \Delta^{-1} G_{-}^{-1} g
$$

We do not have such a formula for the right inverse of $\mathcal{T}_{G}^{r}$ based on the same right Wiener-Hopf factorization.

The principal tool in our analysis are Theorem 1 and Proposition 11. Most of the content can be found in Nikolskii (1985). The connection with Wiener-Hopf factorization indices is a direction application of well known results in the study of Toeplitz operators, see for example Gohberg and Feldman (1971). In the proofs we need the following simple lemma.

## Lemma 2:

(1) Let $V$, $W$ be two subspaces of a Hilbert space $H$, with $\operatorname{dim} W<\infty$. Let $P_{V}$ be the orthogonal projection of $H$ on $V$. Then

$$
P_{V} W=V
$$

if and only if

$$
H=V^{\perp}+W
$$

(2) Let $U, V$, W be subspaces of a Hilbert spce $H$. If $W$ is orthogonal to both $U$ and $V$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
U \cap V=U \cap(V+W) \tag{29}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Proof:

(1) If $H=V^{\perp}+W$, then clearly $V=P_{V} H=P_{V}\left(V^{\perp}+W\right)=P_{V} W$. Conversely, assume $P_{V} W=V$. Let $x \in\left(V^{\perp}+W\right)^{\perp}=V \cap W^{\perp}$. Let $w \in W$ be such that $P_{V} w=x$, then necessarily $(x, w)=0$. Therefore

$$
0=(x, w)=\left(P_{V} w, w\right)=\left\|P_{V} w\right\|^{2}=\|x\|^{2}
$$

So $x=0$, i.e. $\overline{V^{\perp}+W}=H$. Since $W$ is finite dimensional, we have also $V^{\perp}+W=H$.
(2) Clearly $U \cap V \subset U \cap(V+W)$. Assume conversely that $f \in U \cap(V+W)$, i.e. $f=u=v+w$. Since $w=u-v$, we have $w \in(U+V) \cap\left(U^{\perp} \cap V^{\perp}\right)=$ $(U+V) \cap(U+V)$. So necessarily $w=0$ and $u=v$, i.e. $f \in U \cap V$.
Proposition 10: Let $Q, \bar{Q}, K_{1}, K_{2}$ be rational inner functions satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{1} Q=\bar{Q} K_{2} \tag{30}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $K_{1}, \bar{Q}$ left coprime and $Q, K_{2}$ right coprime. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}_{Q K_{2}^{*}}^{r}=\operatorname{dim} H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q \cap H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim} K_{+}^{2} Q \cap H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right) \tag{31}
\end{equation*}
$$

Specifically, the map $g \mapsto g Q$ is a bijective linear map from $\operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}_{Q K_{2}^{*}}^{r}$ to $H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q \cap H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right)$.

We have

$$
\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}_{Q K_{2}^{*}}^{r}=\operatorname{dim}\left\{f \mid\left\|H_{Q K_{2}^{*}}^{r} f\right\|=\|f\|\right\}
$$

Proof: Assume $f \in H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q \cap \underline{H}_{r}\left(K_{2}\right)$, i.e. $f=g_{1} Q=g_{2}=h_{2} K_{2} \quad$ with $g_{1} \in H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right), g_{2} \in H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right)$ and $h_{2} \in \bar{H}_{r}\left(K_{2}^{*}\right)$. Thus $g_{1} Q K_{2}^{*}=h_{2}$. Applying the orthogonal projection $P_{+}$, we obtain $g_{1} Q K_{2}^{*} P_{+}=h_{2} P_{+}=0$, i.e. $g_{1} \in \operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}^{r}{ }_{Q K_{2}^{*}}$.

Conversely, assume $g_{1} \in \operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}_{Q K_{2}^{*}}^{r}$, i.e. $g_{1} Q K_{2}^{*} P_{+}=0$. This means that $g_{1} Q K_{2}^{*}=h_{2}$ with $h_{2} \in H_{-}^{2}$. From the equality $f=g_{1} Q=h_{2} K_{2}$ we conclude that $f \in H_{+}^{2} Q \cap H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right)$. Now, using the equality $K_{1} Q=Q K_{2}$, we can write $H_{+}^{2}=\underset{H_{+}^{2}}{K_{1}} \oplus H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right)$ and hence

$$
H_{+}^{2} Q=H_{+}^{2} K_{1} Q \oplus H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q=H_{+}^{2} \bar{Q} K_{2} \oplus H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q
$$

Obviously $H_{+}^{2} \bar{Q} K_{2} \perp H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right)$, and hence, applying Lemma 2 (ii), we get $H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q \cap H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right)=H_{+}^{2} Q \cap H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right)$.

For the notation used in the following theorem, as well as in the rest of the paper, the reader is advised to consult the remark preceeding Definition 1.
Theorem 1: Let $Q_{-}, Q_{+}, K_{-}, K_{+}$be rational inner functions satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{-} K_{+}=K_{-} Q_{+} \tag{32}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the coprimeness conditions

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
K_{-} \wedge_{L} Q_{-}=I  \tag{33}\\
K_{+} \wedge_{R} Q_{+}=I
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Then
(1) The following statements are equivalent
(a) The Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}^{r} K_{+} Q_{+}^{*}+\mathcal{T}^{r} Q_{-}^{*} K_{-}$is injective.
(b) The Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{Q_{+} K_{+}^{*}}^{r}=\mathcal{T}_{K_{-}^{*} Q_{-}}^{r}$ is surjective.
(c) All left Wiener-Hopf factorization indices of $K_{+} Q_{+}^{*}=Q_{-}^{*} K_{-}$are nonnegative.
(d) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Ker} H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \cap H_{+}^{2} K_{+}=\{0\} \tag{34}
\end{equation*}
$$

(e) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{+}^{2} Q_{+}+H_{-}^{2} K_{+}=L^{2} \tag{35}
\end{equation*}
$$

(f) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{+}^{2} K_{+} \cap H_{-}^{2} Q_{+}=\{0\} \tag{36}
\end{equation*}
$$

(g) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{+}^{2} Q_{+}+H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)=H_{+}^{2} \tag{37}
\end{equation*}
$$

(h) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \tag{38}
\end{equation*}
$$

(i) All the singular values of the Hankel operator $H_{K_{+} Q_{+}^{*}}^{r}=H_{K_{-}^{*} Q_{-}}^{r}$ are $<1$.
(2) The following statements are equivalent
(a) The Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{K_{+}}^{c} Q_{+}^{*}=\mathcal{T}_{Q_{-}^{*} K_{-}}^{c}$ is injective.
(b) the Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{Q_{+} K_{+}^{*}}^{c}=\mathcal{\tau}_{K_{-}^{*} Q_{-}}^{c}$ is surjective.
(c) All right Wiener-Hopf factorization indices of $Q_{+} K_{+}^{*}=K_{-}^{*} Q_{-}$are nonnegative.
(d) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Ker} P_{H_{c}\left(K_{-}\right)} \mid H_{c}\left(Q_{-}\right)=H_{c}\left(Q_{-}\right) \cap K_{-} H_{+}^{2}=\{0\} \tag{39}
\end{equation*}
$$

(e) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{c}\left(K_{-}\right)+Q_{-} H_{+}^{2}=H_{+}^{2} \tag{40}
\end{equation*}
$$

(f) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{-} H_{-}^{2}+Q_{-} H_{+}^{2}=L^{2} \tag{41}
\end{equation*}
$$

(g) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{H_{c}\left(Q_{-}\right)} H_{c}\left(K_{-}\right)=H_{c}\left(Q_{-}\right) \tag{42}
\end{equation*}
$$

(h) All the singular values of the Hankel operator $H_{K_{+}}^{c} Q_{+}^{*}=H_{K_{-}^{*}}^{c} Q_{-}$are $<1$.
(3) The following statements are equivalent
(a) The Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{K_{+}}^{c} Q_{+}^{*}=\mathcal{T}_{K_{-}^{*} Q_{-}}^{c}$ is surjective.
(b) The Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{K_{+} Q_{+}^{*}}^{c}=\mathcal{T}_{K_{-}^{*} Q_{-}}^{c}$ is injective.
(c) All right Wiener-Hopf factorization indices of $Q_{+} K_{+}^{*}=K_{-}^{*} Q_{-}$are nonnegative.
(d) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Ker} P_{H_{c}\left(Q_{-}\right)} \mid H_{c}\left(K_{-}\right)=H_{c}\left(K_{-}\right) \cap Q_{-} H_{+}^{2}=\{0\} \tag{43}
\end{equation*}
$$

(e) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{-} H_{+}^{2}+Q_{-} H_{-}^{2}=L^{2} \tag{44}
\end{equation*}
$$

(f) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
K-H_{+}^{2} H_{c}\left(Q_{-}\right)=H_{+}^{2} \tag{45}
\end{equation*}
$$

(g) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{H_{c}\left(K_{-}\right)} H_{c}\left(Q_{-}\right)=H_{c}\left(K_{-}\right) \tag{46}
\end{equation*}
$$

(h) All the singular values of the Hankel operator $H_{K_{+}}^{c} Q_{+}^{*}=H_{K_{-}^{*}}^{c} Q_{-}$are $<1$.
(4) The following statements are equivalent
(a) The Toeplitz operators $\mathcal{T}_{Q_{+} K_{+}^{*}}^{c}+\mathcal{T}_{K_{-}^{*} Q_{-}}^{c}$ and $\mathcal{T}_{Q_{+} K_{+}^{*}}^{r}=\mathcal{T}_{K_{-}^{*} Q_{-}}^{r}$ are both invertible.
(b) All, left and right, Wiener $-H o p f$ factorization indices of $Q_{+} K_{+}^{*}=K_{-}^{*} Q_{-}$ are trivial.
(c) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
H_{c}\left(K_{-}\right) \cap Q_{-} H_{+}^{2}=\{0\}  \tag{47}\\
H_{c}\left(K_{-}\right)+Q_{-} H_{+}^{2}=H_{+}^{2}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(d) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
P_{H_{r}\left(K_{-}\right)} H_{r}\left(Q_{-}\right)=H_{r}\left(K_{-}\right)  \tag{48}\\
P_{H_{c}\left(Q_{-}\right)} H_{c}\left(K_{-}\right)=H_{c}\left(Q_{-}\right)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(e) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
K_{-} H_{-}^{2} \cap Q_{-} H_{+}^{2}=\{0\}  \tag{49}\\
K_{-} H_{-}^{2}+Q_{-} H_{+}^{2}=L^{2}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(f) All singular values of the Hankel operators $H_{q_{+}}^{c} K_{+}^{*}$ are less than 1 .

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}_{Q_{+} K_{+}^{*}}^{c}=\operatorname{dim}\left\{f\left\|H_{Q_{+} K_{+}^{*}}^{c} f\right\|=\|f\|\right\} \tag{50}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Proof:

(1) The equivalence of (a)-(c) follows from Proposition 8.
(a) $\Leftrightarrow(\mathrm{d})$

We have $f \in \operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}^{r}{ }_{K_{+}} Q_{+}^{*}$ if and only if $0=f K_{+} Q_{+}^{*} P_{+}$, i.e. if and only if $f K_{+} \in H_{-}^{2} Q_{+}$, that is if and only if $g=f K_{+} \in H_{-}^{2} Q_{+} \cap H_{+}^{2} K_{+}$. Since $K_{+}$is inner, the equivalence follows.
(e) $\Rightarrow(\mathrm{g})$

Applying $P_{+}$to equality (35) yields (37).
$(\mathrm{g}) \Rightarrow(\mathrm{h})$
We apply the projection $P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)}$to equality (37) to get (38).
(h) $\Rightarrow(\mathrm{a})$

Assume $H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)}$is surjective, i.e. $H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)}$is injective. This implies (34), and hence also (a).
(a) $\Leftrightarrow(\mathrm{i})$

Since for any $L^{\infty}$ matrix $A$ and $f \in H_{+}^{2}$ we have

$$
\|f A\|^{2}=\left\|f A P_{-}\right\|^{2}+\left\|f A P_{+}\right\|^{2}=\left\|f H_{A}^{r}\right\|^{2}+\left\|f \mathcal{T}_{A}^{r}\right\|^{2}
$$

it is clear that if $A$ is an all-pass function, i.e. isometric valued, then we have

$$
\|f\|^{2}=\left\|f H_{A}^{r}\right\|^{2}+\left\|f \mathcal{T}_{A}^{r}\right\|^{2}
$$

In particular we have $f \in \operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}_{A}^{r}$ if and only if $\|f\|=\left\|f H_{A}^{c}\right\|$. Specializing to the all-pass function $K_{+} Q_{+}^{*}=Q_{-}^{*} K_{-}$, we get

$$
\operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}_{K_{+} Q_{+}^{*}}^{r}=\left\{f \mid\left\|f H_{K_{+}}^{r} Q_{+}^{*}\right\|=\|f\|\right\}
$$

In particular $\mathcal{T}_{K_{+} Q_{+}}^{r}$ is injective if and only if all the singular values of the Hankel operator $H_{K_{+} Q_{+}^{*}}^{r}=H_{Q_{-}^{*}}^{*}{ }_{-}$are $<1$.

All other statements are proved analogously.
We would like to point out that, in view of Proposition 9, the statements in parts (1) and (3) of the previous theorem are equivalent. The equivalence of some of the relations can be proved directly. As an example we prove the equivalence of (41) and (35), using the equality (32) and the fact that multiplication by all pass functions is a unitary map in $L^{2}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
L^{2} & =K_{-} H_{-}^{2}+Q_{-} H_{+}^{2}=H_{-}^{2}+K_{-}^{*} Q_{-} H_{+}^{2} \\
& =H_{-}^{2}+Q_{+} K_{+}^{*} H_{+}^{2}=Q_{+}^{*} H_{-}^{2}+K_{+}^{*} H_{+}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

The equality $L^{2}=Q_{+}^{*} H_{-}^{2}+K_{+}^{*} H_{+}^{2}$ for column spaces is clearly equivalent to the equality $L^{2}=H_{+}^{2} Q_{+}+H_{-}^{2} K_{+}$for row spaces.

One other thing worth noting is the close connection between Toeplitz operators and projection operators. In the context of polynomial models it was put to effective use in Fuhrmann (1981).

The previous theorem was essentially about a special class of Toeplitz operators, but did not relate to a spectral function or a spectral factorization problem. In that case, more can be said. Heutistically, based on our assumptions, the number of zeros of a spectral factor, as measured by $Q_{ \pm}$cannot exceed the number of poles as measured by $K_{ \pm}$. We state the result as a one sided invertibility of the Toeplitz operators with the symbol equal to the phase function.
Proposition 11: Let $\Phi$ be a $p \times p$, rank $m_{0}$, weakly coercive, spectral function, and let $W_{ \pm}, \bar{W}_{ \pm}$be the $p \times m_{0}$ extremal spectral factors. Then both Toeplitz operators $\mathcal{T}^{c}{ }_{W_{+}}^{-L} W_{-}=\mathcal{T}_{K_{+}}^{c} Q_{+}^{*}=\mathcal{T}_{Q_{-} K_{-}}^{c}$ and $\mathcal{T}^{r} \bar{W}_{+}^{-L} W_{-}$are injective.
Proof: For the injectivity of $\mathcal{T}^{c} \bar{W}_{+}^{L} W_{-}$we show an explicit left inverse, namely the $\operatorname{map} f \mapsto W_{-}^{-L} P_{+} \vec{W}_{+} f$. Indeed, using (20), we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
W_{-}^{L} P_{+} \bar{W}_{+} O_{+} \bar{W}_{+}^{-}{ }^{L} W_{-} f & =W^{L} P_{+} \bar{W}_{+} \bar{W}_{+}^{-}{ }^{L} W_{-} f \\
& =W_{-}^{L} P_{+} W_{-} f=W_{-}^{-}{ }^{L} W_{-} f=f
\end{aligned}
$$

The injectivity of $\mathcal{T}^{r} \bar{W}_{+}^{-L} W_{-}$follows from Proposition 9.
Corollary 3: With the notation of Proposition 11, we have the following.
(1) The maps $H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)}$and $P_{H_{c}\left(K_{-}\right)} \mid H_{c}\left(Q_{-}\right)$are injective.
(2) The maps $H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)}$and $P_{H_{c}\left(Q_{-}\right)} \mid H_{c}\left(K_{-}\right)$are surjective.

Proof: Follows from Proposition 11 and Theorem 1. The second statement follows by duality.

## 5. Rectangular spectral factors

In this section we study the main object of the paper, namely the set $w^{m}$ of all minimal stable, rectangular spectral factor of size $p \times m$ for $m_{0} \leq m \leq p+n$. In particular, we are interested in the parametrization of this set for a given $m$. We will study first two of these sets of minimal, stable rectangular spectral factors: those that are internal (i.e. such that $m=m_{0}$ ) and those that are external (in a sense that will be made precise later). The understanding of these, in a sense opposite, special cases enables us to fully understand the general rectangular case. Our approach is
relating the set of spectral factors to the arithmetic of inner functions and their factorizations. This will also be interpreted later on geometrically.

As in the case of regular spectral factors, the four extremal spectral factors studied in $\S 3$ provide the framework for our analysis of all rectangular spectral factors.

The next proposition studies the embedding of rigid functions in inner ones. This is a special case of Darlington synthesis [see Dewilde (1976)]

## Proposition 12:

(1) Let $\hat{R}$ be a $p \times m_{0}$ column rigid function, that is $\hat{R}^{*} \hat{R}=I$. Then there exists a $p \times\left(p-m_{0}\right)$ column rigid function $\widetilde{R}$ such that
(a) $R=\left(\begin{array}{l}\hat{R} \widetilde{R}) \text { is inner. } \\ \text { (b) }\end{array}\right.$
(b) We have the equality of Mc Millan degrees

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta(R)=\delta(\hat{R}) \tag{51}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\widetilde{R}$ is uniquely determined up to a right constant unitary factor.
(2) Let $\widetilde{R}$ be a $m_{0} \times p$ row rigid function, that is $\hat{R} \hat{R}^{*}=I$. Then there exists a $\left(p-m_{0}\right) \times p$ row rigid function $\widetilde{R}$ such that
(a) $R=\binom{\hat{R}}{\widetilde{R}}$ is inner.
(b) We have the equality of Mc Millan degrees

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta(R)=\delta(\hat{R}) \tag{52}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\widetilde{R}$ is uniquely determined up to a left constant unitary factor.

## Proof:

(1) Assume $\hat{R}^{*} \hat{R}=I$, then $\hat{R} \hat{R}^{*} \leq I$. Assume an inner embedding of $\hat{R}$ exists, i.e. there exists an $\widetilde{R}$ such that $R=(\hat{R} \widetilde{R})$ is inner. Since $R^{*} R=R R^{*}=I$, we have $\widetilde{R} \widetilde{R}^{*}=I-\hat{E} \hat{R}^{*} \geq 0$. Thus $\widetilde{R}$ is a spectral factor of $I-\hat{R} \hat{R}^{*}$. To minimize the McMillan degree of $R$, which is clearly bounded below by $\delta(\hat{R})$, we take $\widetilde{R}$ to be the outer spectral factor of $I-\hat{R} \hat{R}^{*}$.

We show now that in this case

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Im} H_{\widetilde{R}} \subset \operatorname{Im} H_{\hat{R}} \tag{53}
\end{equation*}
$$

This inclusion is equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{ker} H_{\hat{R}}^{*} \subset \operatorname{ker} H_{\widetilde{R}}^{*} \tag{54}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that $f \in \operatorname{ker} H_{\hat{R}}^{*}$ if and only if $\hat{R}^{*} f \in H_{+}^{2}$ and similarly $f \in \operatorname{ker} H_{\widetilde{R}}^{*}$ if and only if $\widetilde{R}^{*} f \in H_{+}^{2}$. If the inclusion (54) does not hold, there exists an $f \in \tilde{R}_{+}^{2}$ such that $\hat{R}^{*} f \in H_{+}^{2}$ and $\widetilde{R}^{*} f=g+h$, with $g \in H_{+}^{2}$ and $0 \neq h \in H_{-}^{2}$. Now

$$
f=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{R} & \widetilde{R}
\end{array}\right)\binom{\hat{R}^{*}}{\widetilde{R}^{*}} f=\hat{R}\left(\hat{R}^{*} f\right)+\widetilde{R}(g+h)
$$

which shows that there exists a non-zero $h \in H_{-}^{2}$ for which $\widetilde{\sim} h \underset{\sim}{\mathcal{R}} H_{+}^{2}$ or, equivalently, $\widetilde{R} h \perp H_{-}^{2}$. However this implies $h \perp \widetilde{R}^{*} H_{-}^{2}$. Since $\widetilde{R}$ is row outer, we have $H_{+}^{2} \widetilde{R}=H_{+}^{2}$ and hence $\widetilde{R}^{*} H_{-}^{2}=H_{-}^{2}$. This shows that $h=0$,
contradicting our assumption. Thus the inclusion (53) holds. This inclusion immediately implies

$$
\operatorname{Im} H_{(\hat{R} \tilde{R})}=\operatorname{Im} H_{\hat{R}}
$$

and hence, by realization theory, that $\delta((\hat{R} \widetilde{R}))=\delta(\hat{R})$.
(2) The proof is similar or can be obtained from the first part by duality considerations.

We will refer to the extensions obtained in the previous proposition as minimal inner embeddings.

The next proposition relates the extremal factors to other minimal, stable and antistable, spectral factors via the use of inner functions. Since inner functions are, by Beurling's theorem, intimately related to invariant subspaces, this result opens up the possibility of a geometric approach to the study of spectral factors.

## Proposition 13:

(1) Let $W_{-}^{e}$ and $W_{+}^{e}$ be the extended, stable, minimum and maximum phase respectively, spectral factors. Given any minimal stable spectral factor $W$, there exist, essentially unique, inner functions $Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}$, of minimal Mc Millan degree, for which

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
W & =W_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime}  \tag{55}\\
W_{+}^{e} & =W Q^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

The inner functions $Q^{\prime \prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}$ are uniquely determined by the normalization $Q^{\prime}(\infty)=Q^{\prime \prime}(\infty) I$. We shall refer to the factorization $W=W_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime}$ as an outer-inner factorization.
(2) Let $\bar{W}_{-}^{e}$ and $\bar{W}_{+}^{e}$ be the extended, antistable, minimum and maximum phase respectively, spectral factors. Given any minimal antistable spectral factor $\bar{W}$, there exist essentially unique inner functions $\bar{Q}^{\prime}, \bar{Q}$ " for which

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
\bar{W} & =\bar{W}_{-}^{e} \bar{Q}^{\prime}  \tag{56}\\
\bar{W}_{+}^{e} & =\overline{W Q}^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

The inner functions $\bar{Q}^{\prime}, \bar{Q}$ '" are uniquely determined by the normalization $\bar{Q}^{\prime}(\infty)=Q^{\prime \prime}(\infty) I$.

## Proof:

(1) Let $W$ be a minimal $p \times m$ stable spectral factor. Then, by Proposition 1 , there exists an essentially unique row rigid $m_{0} \times m$ function $\hat{Q}^{\prime}$ for which $W=W_{-} \hat{Q}^{\prime}$. Let

$$
Q^{\prime}=\binom{\hat{Q}^{\prime}}{\tilde{Q}^{\prime}}
$$

be the minimal inner extension of $\hat{Q}^{\prime}$. This extension exists by Proposition 12 and is unique up to a constant left unitary factor of the form

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0 \\
0 & V
\end{array}\right)
$$

We clearly have

$$
W=W_{-} \hat{Q}^{\prime}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
W_{-} & 0
\end{array}\right)\binom{\hat{Q}^{\prime}}{\tilde{Q}^{\prime}}=W_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime}
$$

By Proposition 12, we have $\delta\left(Q^{\prime}\right)=\delta\left(\hat{Q}^{\prime}\right)$.
Conversely, let $W=W_{-}^{e} Q_{1}$ with $Q_{1}$ inner of minimal McMillan degree. Set

$$
Q_{1}=\binom{\hat{Q}_{1}}{\widetilde{Q}_{\uparrow}}
$$

Then $W=W_{-} \hat{Q}_{1^{*}}=W_{-} \hat{Q}^{\prime}$, which by the left invertibility of $W_{-}$implies $\hat{Q}_{1}\left(\hat{Q}_{1}\right)^{*}=\hat{Q}^{\prime}\left(\hat{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*}=I$, it follows by minimality that $\hat{Q}_{1}=V \hat{Q}^{\prime}$ for some inner function $V$. If $\delta\left(\hat{Q}_{1}^{\prime}\right)=\delta\left(\hat{Q}^{\prime}\right)$ then this implies that $V$ is necessarily constant.
(2) The proof is similar and we omit it.

As a consequence of the previous proposition, we have the following characterization of minimal, stable, spectral factors.

Theorem 2: Given a rational spectral function $\Phi$, let $W_{+}^{e}$ be its extended maximum phase, stable spectral factor. Then $W \in H_{+}^{\infty}$ is a minimal, stable, spectral factor if and only if there exists an inner function $Q \prime$ such that $W=W_{+}^{e}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*}$.
Proof: By Proposition 13, if $W$ is a minimal, stable, spectral factor, we have $W=W_{+}^{e}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*}$ for some inner function $Q^{\prime \prime}$.

Conversely, assume $W=W_{+}^{e}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*} \in H_{+}^{\infty}$ for an inner function $Q^{\prime \prime}$. Clearly, $W$ is a stable spectral factor and it remains to show that it is a minimal factor. Applying Lemma 3.5.7 in Fuhrmann (1981), we have $\operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W}^{c} \subset \operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W_{+}^{e}}^{c}$ and hence

$$
\delta(W)=\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W}^{c} \leq \operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Im} \hat{H}_{W_{+}^{e}}^{c}=\delta\left(W_{+}^{e}\right)
$$

In turn, this implies

$$
2 \delta\left(W_{+}^{e}\right)=\delta(\Phi) \leq 2 \delta(W) \leq 2 \delta\left(W_{+}^{e}\right)
$$

Thus we must have equality throughout, which proves the minimality of $W$.
Proposition 13 dealt with the zeros of a stable or antistable spectral factor. The next theorem utilizes the DSS factorization to bring in the pole structure of spectral factors and its relation to zeros.

Theorem 3: Let $W$ be a minimal, $p \times m$, stable, spectral factor $W$, and let

$$
\begin{equation*}
W=\bar{W} K=\bar{W} K^{-*} \tag{57}
\end{equation*}
$$

be its right DSS factorization over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Then
(1) $\bar{W}$ is a minimal, antistable spectral factor. Moreover


Figure 4.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{W}=W K^{-1}=W K^{*} \tag{58}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a right DSS factorization of $\bar{W}$ over $H_{+}^{\infty}$.
(2) Let $Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}, \bar{Q}^{\prime}, \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}$ be the inner functions whose existence is guaranteed by Proposition 13. Then figure 4 is commutative.
(3) The following coprimeness conditions hold. $K_{-}^{e} \wedge_{L} \bar{Q}^{\prime}=I, K \wedge_{L} \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}=I$, $K \wedge R Q^{\prime}=I, K_{+}^{e} \wedge_{R} Q^{\prime \prime}=I$.

## Proof:

(1) Since $K$ is inner, $\bar{W}$ is clearly an antistable, spectral factor. From (57) we get (58). Since $\bar{W}$ is a spectral factor, we have

$$
\delta(W) \leq \delta(\bar{W})=\delta\left(W K^{-1}\right) \leq \delta\left(K^{*}\right)=\delta(K)=\delta(W)
$$

Thus we have equality throughout and $\bar{W}$ is a minimal spectral factor. This also shows the right coprimeness of $W, K$, i.e. (58) is a right coprime DSS factorization.
(2) The upper triangle of figure 4 follows from (15) and (55). Similarly, the lower triangle follows from (15) and (56). The square is the same as figure 2. Finally, (55), (56) and (57) yield $W_{+}^{e}=W Q^{\prime \prime}=\bar{W} K Q^{\prime \prime}=\bar{W}_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime} K Q^{\prime \prime}$ which is the middle part of the diagram.
(3) The first relation follows from the fact that from (56) and (58), we can write $\bar{W}_{-}^{e} \bar{W}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*}=W_{-}^{e}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right)^{*}$. If $\bar{Q}^{\prime}$ and $K_{-}^{e}$ were not left coprime, then we could multiply on the right by the inverse of the common factor, obtaining another factorization of $W_{-}^{e}$; but then (58) would not be a DSS factorization. A similar argument applies to the relation $\bar{W}=W_{+}^{e}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*}=W K^{*}$ [derived also from (56) and (58)] to $W=W_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime}=\bar{W} K$ and to $W_{+}^{e}=W Q^{\prime \prime}=$ $W_{+}^{e} K_{+}^{e}$ [both from (55) and (57)]

We will find the following lemma useful in the sequel.

Lemma 3: Let $W_{1}, W_{2}$ be two minimal, stable spectral factors having the right coprime DSS factorizations, over $H_{-}^{\infty}$, given by $W_{i}=\bar{W}_{i} K_{i}$. Assume $W_{2}=W_{1} T$ for some inner function $T$, and assume $T$ is the inner function with smallest Mc Millan degree such that the relation_holds (in the sense_ of Proposition_12). Then there exists a unique inner function $\bar{T}$ for which $K_{1} T=\bar{T} K_{2}$ and $\bar{W}_{2}=\bar{W}_{1} \bar{T}$.
Proof: By our assumption we have $\bar{W}_{2} K_{2}=W_{2}=W_{1} T=\bar{W}_{1} K_{1} T$. Thus we have two right DSS factorizations of $W_{\underline{2}}$ of which $W_{2} K_{2}$ is_right coprime. There exists therefore a unique inner function $\bar{T}$ for which $\bar{W}_{1}=\bar{W}_{2} T^{*}$ and $K_{1} T=\bar{T} K_{2}$. This also implies the equality $\bar{W}_{1} \bar{T}=\bar{W}_{2}$.

The rigid functions, characterized by Proposition 13, can be further factored and this leads to a finer analysis of the set of spectral factors.

Thus we consider next the subsidiary factorizations

$$
\left.\begin{array}{r}
\hat{Q}^{\prime}=\hat{Q}_{1} \hat{Q}_{s}  \tag{59}\\
\hat{Q}^{\prime \prime}=\hat{Q}_{\ell} \hat{Q}_{P}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Here $\hat{Q}_{1}, \hat{Q}_{\mathcal{Y}}$ are $m_{0} \times m_{0}$ inner whereas $\hat{Q}_{s}, \hat{Q}_{z}$ are right and left outer, i.e. are right and left invertible respectively over $H_{+}^{\infty}$. That such factorizations are possible is a direct result of Beurling's theorem. We will say that $\hat{Q}_{1}$ and $\hat{Q}_{1}^{\prime}$ describe the internal antistable and stable zeros respectively of $W$, whereas $\hat{Q}_{2}$ and $\hat{Q}_{z}^{\prime}$ describe the external antistable and stable zeros respectively of $W$. We shall refer to the factorizations (59) as the internal-external and external-internal factorizations of $\hat{Q}^{\prime}$ and $Q^{\prime \prime}$ respectively. The terminology is fitting as the factorizations in (59) are innerouter and outer-inner factorizations.

We recall that we need not deal with rigid functions if we utilize the results of Proposition 13. Let $W$ be a $p \times m$ minimal stable spectral factor. Let $W_{-}^{e}, W_{+}^{e}$ be the appropriately extended, i.e. of dimension $p \times m$, extremal spectral factors. The extension is obtained by adding $m-m_{0}$ zero columns to $W_{-}$and $W_{+}$respectively. Let $Q^{\prime}$, $Q^{\prime \prime}$ be the inner functions whose existence is guaranteed by Proposition 13. Thus

$$
Q^{\prime}=\binom{\hat{Q}^{\prime}}{\tilde{Q}^{\prime}}, \quad Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q}^{\prime \prime} & \widetilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right)
$$

with $\widetilde{Q}^{\prime}, \widetilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}$ given by the embedding procedure described in Proposition 12.
The factorizations (59) induce the following factorizations

$$
Q^{\prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\hat{Q}_{1} & 0  \tag{60}\\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)\binom{\hat{Q}_{i}}{\tilde{Q}^{\prime}}=Q_{1} Q_{2}
$$

and

$$
Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q}^{\prime \prime} & \widetilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\hat{Q}_{r} & 0  \tag{61}\\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)=Q z Q r
$$

We shall refer to these factorizations as internal-external and external-internal factorizations of $Q^{\prime}$ and $Q^{\prime \prime}$ respectively.

The interesting phenomena emerging in the study of rectangular spectral factors is the fact that the internal zeros, namely the zeros parametrized by the inner functions $Q_{1}$ and $Q^{\ell}$ no longer account for all the (stable) zeros of $W_{-}$or the (antistable)
zeros of $W_{+}$. These are measured by the inner function $Q_{+}$. So some zeros have been externalized. This is a central theme in the parametrization of the set of stable spectral factors. The extreme situation is encountered in the set of external factors, a class that will be introduced in Definition 4.

The following theorem analyses the situation in the general case, and brings in a new inner function. It will be seen later that this inner function is a measure of the number of external zeros of the spectral factor. A geometric interpretation of this inner function in terms of reachability subspaces will be given in a subsequent paper.

We turn our attention now to the study of arbitrary, minimal $p \times m$ spectral factors. Essentially, the next theorem provides a parametrization of the set of all $p \times m$, minimal, stable spectral factors. This will be made explicit in Theorem 7.

Theorem 4: Let $\Phi$ be a $p \times p$, rational spectral function of rank $m_{0}$. Let $W$ be a minimal, $p \times m$, stable spectral factor. Let $W=W K$ be the DSS factorization over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Let $Q_{+}, Q-$ be the $m_{0} \times m_{0}$ inner functions for which

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
W_{-} Q_{+}=W_{+}  \tag{62}\\
\bar{W}_{-} Q_{-}=\bar{W}_{+}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Let $Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}, \bar{Q}^{\prime}, \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}$ be determined by Proposition 13 have the internal-external factorizations

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q^{\prime}=Q_{1} Q \varepsilon, \quad \bar{Q}^{\prime}=\bar{Q}_{1} \bar{Q}^{2} \tag{63}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the external-internal factorizations

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q^{\prime \prime}=Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime}, \quad \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}=\bar{Q} z^{\prime} \bar{Q} r \tag{64}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then
(1) (a) We have $Q_{1}$ is the greatest common left inner factor of $Q^{\prime}$ and $Q_{+}^{e}$ and $Q^{\uparrow}$ is the greatest common right inner factor of $Q^{\prime \prime} \underline{a}$ nd $Q_{+}^{e}$. We have $Q_{1}$ is the greatest common left inner factor of $\bar{Q}^{\prime}$ and $\bar{Q}_{+}^{e}$ and $\bar{Q}_{\uparrow}$ is the greatest common right inner factor of $\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}$ and $Q_{+}^{e}$.
(b) $\bar{Q}$ r is the greatest common right inner factor of $\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}$ and $\bar{Q}^{e}$ - and $Q \uparrow$ is the greatest common right inner factor of $Q^{\prime \prime}$ and $Q^{e}$.
(2) We have

$$
Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0  \tag{65}\\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

with $R$ inner. We have

$$
\bar{Q}^{\prime} \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q- & 0  \tag{66}\\
0 & \bar{R}
\end{array}\right)
$$

with $\bar{R}$ inner.
(3) There exists a unique inner function $Q$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{+}^{e}=Q_{1} Q Q_{r} \tag{67}
\end{equation*}
$$

A similar factorization holds for $\bar{Q}^{e}$, namely

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{Q}_{+}^{e}=\bar{Q}_{1} \overline{Q Q}_{1}^{\prime \prime} \tag{68}
\end{equation*}
$$

(4) We have the following equalities

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
K_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime}=\bar{Q}^{\prime} K  \tag{69}\\
\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}=K Q^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Here $K_{-}^{e}, \bar{Q}^{\prime}$ are left coprime and $Q^{\prime}, K$ right coprime. Similarly, $K, \bar{Q}$ " are left coprime and $K_{+}^{e}, Q^{\prime \prime}$ right coprime.
(5) Define, after Lindquist and Picci (1991),

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
W_{0-}=W_{-}^{e} Q_{\uparrow}  \tag{70}\\
W_{0+}=W_{+}^{e}\left(Q_{\uparrow}\right)^{*}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Then we have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
W & =W_{0-} Q z  \tag{71}\\
W Q z & =W_{0+}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(6) Let

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
W_{0-}=\bar{W}_{0-} K_{0-}  \tag{72}\\
W_{0+}=\bar{W}_{0+} K_{0+}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

be right coprime DSS factorizations over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Then

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
K_{-}^{e} Q_{\uparrow}=\bar{Q}_{\uparrow} K_{0-}  \tag{73}\\
\bar{Q}_{\uparrow} K_{+}^{e}=K_{0+} Q_{\uparrow}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{0-} Q=\bar{Q} K_{0+} \tag{74}
\end{equation*}
$$

(7) We have

$$
\bar{Q}^{\prime} K Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{-} K_{+} & 0  \tag{75}\\
0 & R_{W}
\end{array}\right)
$$

with $R_{W}$ inner, and moreover

$$
\begin{equation*}
R=\bar{R}=R_{W} \tag{76}
\end{equation*}
$$

(8) (a) The inner functions $Q$ and $Q z$ are left coprime and $Q$ and $Q z$ are right coprime.
(b) The inner functions $\bar{Q}$ and $\bar{Q} z$ are left coprime and $\bar{Q}$ and $\bar{Q} z$ are right coprime.
(c) The inner functions $Q 2, R^{e}$ are left coprime and $\underline{Q} \underline{Q}, R^{e}$ are right coprime.
(d) The inner functions $\bar{Q}\left\{, R^{e}\right.$ are left coprime and $\bar{Q}_{\mathcal{E}}, R^{e}$ are right coprime.
(9) The inner functions $Q, \bar{Q}, Q \varepsilon, Q \notin, \bar{Q} \ell, \bar{Q} \notin, R$ are all equivalent.


Figure 5.
(10) The inner functions $K_{-}^{e}, K_{0-}, K, K_{0+}, K_{+}^{e}$ are all equivalent.
(11) Figure 5 is commutative.

## Proof:

(1) (a) Recall that in the factorization $\hat{Q}^{\prime}=\hat{Q}_{1} \hat{Q}_{2}$ the factor $\hat{Q}_{2}$ is outer. Since $\hat{Q}^{\prime} \hat{Q}^{\prime \prime}=Q_{+}, \hat{Q}^{\prime}$ is a left inner factor of $Q_{+}$. This implies that

$$
Q^{\prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\hat{Q}_{1} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

is a common left inner factor of $Q^{\prime}, Q_{+}^{e}$. Any left inner factor of $Q_{+}^{e}$ is, up to a constant right unitary factor, of the form

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

Since $\hat{Q} z$ is outer, it is clear that $Q_{1}$ is the greatest common left inner factor of $Q^{\prime}$ and $Q_{+}^{e}$. The second assertion is proved analogously.
(b) The second part follows by duality considerations, working over $H_{-}^{\infty}$ and starting the analysis from $\bar{W}_{+}$.
(2) Note that from

$$
Q^{\prime}=\binom{\hat{Q}^{\prime}}{\tilde{Q}^{\prime}}, \quad Q^{\prime \prime}\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q}^{\prime \prime} & \tilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right)
$$

we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime} & =\binom{\hat{Q}^{\prime}}{\widetilde{Q}^{\prime}}\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q}^{\prime \prime} & \widetilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\hat{Q}^{\prime} \hat{Q}^{\prime \prime} & \hat{Q}^{\prime} \widetilde{Q}^{\prime \prime} \\
\widetilde{Q}^{\prime} \hat{Q}^{\prime \prime} & \widetilde{Q}^{\prime} \widetilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Here we used the fact that $W_{-} \hat{Q}^{\prime} \hat{Q}^{\prime \prime}=W_{+}$and hence $\hat{Q}^{\prime} \hat{Q}^{\prime \prime}=Q_{+}$. Since $Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}$ is inner, it follows, necessarily, that $\hat{Q}^{\prime} \widetilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}=0$ and $\widetilde{Q}^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=0$. Finally, this also implies that $R=\widetilde{Q}^{\prime} \widetilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}$ is inner.
(3) Note that $\hat{Q}^{\prime} \widetilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}=0$ implies $\hat{Q}_{2} \tilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}=0$ and $\widetilde{Q}^{\prime} \hat{Q}^{\prime \prime}=0$ implies $\widetilde{Q}^{\prime} \hat{Q}^{\prime} z^{\prime}=0$. Using this, we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
& W_{+}^{e}=W_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=W_{-}^{e}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\hat{Q}_{1} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)\binom{\hat{Q}_{2}}{\tilde{Q}^{\prime}}\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q}_{\underline{\prime}} & \tilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\hat{Q}_{\hat{1}} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right) \\
& =W_{-}^{e}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\hat{Q}_{1} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q}_{2} \hat{Q}_{z} & \hat{Q}_{2} \tilde{Q}^{\prime \prime} \\
\widetilde{Q}^{\prime} \hat{Q}_{z} & \widetilde{Q}^{\prime} \tilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\hat{Q}_{P} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right) \\
& =W_{-}^{e}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\hat{Q}_{1} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\hat{Q}_{\Gamma} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

But we also have

$$
W_{+}^{e}=W_{-}^{e}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

This implies the equality $Q_{+}=\hat{Q_{1}} \hat{Q} \hat{Q}_{r}$.
(4) Since $W$ is a minimal, stable spectral factor, we have $W=W_{-} \hat{Q}^{\prime}=$ $\bar{W}_{-} \underline{K}_{-} \hat{Q}^{\prime}$. But we also have $W=\bar{W}^{\prime} K=\bar{W}_{-} \hat{Q}^{\prime} K$. Using the left invertibility of $\bar{W}_{-}$and comparing the two expressions, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{-} \hat{Q}^{\prime}=\stackrel{\Delta}{Q}^{\prime} K \tag{77}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $K$ is the minimal inner function that stabilizes $\bar{W}$, then necessarily $\hat{Q}^{\prime}$ and $K$ are right coprime. Clearly, this implies the right coprimeness of $Q^{\prime}$ and $K$. Considering the respective Bezout equations, this shows also the right coprimeness of $Q^{\prime}$ and $K$. Similarly, $K_{-}^{*}$ is the minimal conjugate inner function that destabilizes $W_{-}$, which implies the left coprimeness of $K_{-}$ and $\stackrel{\Delta}{Q}^{\prime}$. Equation (77), together with the coprimeness conditions, shows that $K$. and $K$ are equivalent inner functions. In particular, they have the same McMillan degree. Also it follows that the McMillan degrees of $\hat{Q}^{\prime}, \stackrel{\Delta}{Q}^{\prime}$ are equal. Now we look at

$$
Q^{\prime}=\binom{\hat{Q}^{\prime}}{\tilde{Q}^{\prime}} \quad \text { and } \quad\binom{\hat{Q}^{\prime}}{\tilde{Q}^{\prime}}
$$

which are both minimal McMillan degree inner completions. So $\delta\left(Q^{\prime}\right)=$ $\delta\left(\hat{Q}^{\prime}\right)=\delta\left(\stackrel{Q}{Q}^{\prime}\right)=\delta\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)$. This shows that

$$
\bar{Q}^{\prime} K=\binom{\stackrel{\Delta}{Q}^{\prime} K}{\tilde{Q}^{\prime} K}=\binom{K-\hat{Q}^{\prime}}{\tilde{Q}^{\prime} K}
$$

is a minimal inner extension of $\stackrel{\Delta}{Q}^{\prime}$. Since a minimal inner extension is unique up to a left constant inner factor which we absorb into $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{Q}^{\prime}$, we conclude that $\widetilde{Q}^{\prime}=\tilde{Q}^{\prime} K$. Thus the first equality in (69) follows.

The second equality follows by duality considerations, working over $H_{-}^{\infty}$ and starting the analysis for $\bar{W}_{+}$.
(5) We compute $W=W_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime}=W_{-}^{e} Q_{1} Q 2=W_{0-} Q_{2}$. Similarly, $W_{+}^{e}=W Q^{\prime \prime}=$ $W Q z Q r$, and so $W_{0+}=W_{+}^{e}(Q r)^{*}=W Q \varepsilon$.
(6) The equalities in (73) are a special case of those in (69), replacing $W$ by $W_{0}$ for the first one and by $W_{0+}$ for the second. The existence of $Q$ follows also from that of $Q$ by an application of Lemma 3 .
(7) Using the equalities (69), we have

$$
K_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=\bar{Q}^{\prime} K Q^{\prime \prime}=\bar{Q}^{\prime} \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}
$$

Substituting equalities (65) and (66), we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bar{Q}^{\prime} K Q^{\prime \prime} & =K_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=K_{-}^{e}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
K_{-} Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\bar{Q}^{\prime} \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{-} & 0 \\
0 & \bar{R}
\end{array}\right) K_{+}^{e}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{-} K_{+} & 0 \\
0 & \bar{R}
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Since we have the equality $K_{-} Q_{+}=Q_{-} K_{+}$, it follows that $R=\bar{R}$ and that

$$
\bar{Q}^{\prime} K Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{-} K_{+} & 0 \\
0 & \bar{R}
\end{array}\right)
$$

(8) (a) Since $Q_{1}$ is the greatest common left inner factor of $Q^{\prime}$ and $Q_{+}^{e}$, it follows that $Q<, Q Q$ rare left coprime and so are $Q<, Q$. In a similar way, the right coprimeness of the pair $Q z, Q$ is proved.
(b) In much the same way, the left coprimeness of $\bar{Q} \varepsilon, \bar{Q}$ and the right coprimeness of $\bar{Q}, \bar{Q}$ is also proved.
(c) A common left inner factor of

$$
Q z=\binom{\hat{Q}^{\prime}}{\tilde{Q}^{\prime}} \quad \text { and } \quad\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

is, up to a right constant unitary factor, of the form

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0 \\
0 & P
\end{array}\right)
$$

If $P$ were non-trivial, it would contradict the assumption that $Q^{\prime}$ is the minimal McMillan degree extension of $\hat{Q}^{\prime}$. Hence the right coprimeness.
(d) The proof is similar.
(9) We use the equalities

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
Q_{2} Q Z=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right) \\
\bar{Q} \leqslant \bar{Q} \underline{Z}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\hat{Q} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right) \tag{78}
\end{array}\right\},
$$

These equalities, together with the proven coprimeness conditions, imply now the equivalences

$$
\begin{aligned}
& Q_{2} \simeq\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right) \simeq\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) \simeq Q \simeq R \\
& \bar{Q}_{2} \simeq\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{Q} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right) \simeq\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) \simeq \bar{Q} \simeq R
\end{aligned}
$$

By transitivity of the equivalence of inner functions, the statement is proved.
(10) The equality $K Q^{\prime \prime} \equiv \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}$, the right coprimeness of $Q^{\prime \prime}, K_{+}^{e}$ and the left coprimeness of $K, \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}$ imply the equivalence of $K$ and $K_{+}^{e}$. The rest follows by the transitivity of equivalence.
(11) Equalities (63), (64), (69), (73), (70), (71), (74) taken together, yield the commutativity of the diagram.

Definition 3: We denote by $\pi_{1}$ the projection of $\mathbf{C}^{m}$ on the subspace of all vectors whose last $m-m_{0}$ coordinates vanish, and by $\pi_{0}$ its complement, i.e. $\pi:=I-\pi$.
Corollary 4: Given the factorizations (65) and (66) with $Q_{ \pm}$both $m_{0} \times m_{0}$ inner functions, then we have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{\mathrm{r}} \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)  \tag{79}\\
H_{r}\left(\overline{Q^{\prime \prime}}\right) \pi_{\mathrm{H}} \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{-}\right)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Proof: The factorization (65) can be written as $Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=Q_{+}^{e} R^{e}=R^{e} Q_{+}^{e}$ and therefore we have

$$
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \oplus H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)
$$

and hence the inclusion $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \subset H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \oplus H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)$. Applying the projection $\pi_{1}$ to this inclusion, we get $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{\mathcal{C}} \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)$. The other inclusion is proved similarly.

Theorem 4 is general but two special cases need to be pointed out. This leads us to the following definition.
Definition 4: Let $W$ be a $p \times m$ minimal, stable spectral factor and let $Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}$ be the minimal inner functions characterized in Proposition 13.
(1) We say $W$ is an internal spectral factor if we have $Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=Q_{+}^{e}$.
(2) We say $W$ is an external spectral factor if we have
(a) $Q^{\prime}, Q_{+}^{e}$ are left coprime, and
(b) $Q^{\prime \prime}, Q_{+}^{e}$ are right coprime.

We point out that our definition of external spectral factors differs from the way Lindquist and Picci use this term. In their work they equate external with non-internal.

A description of factorizations of inner functions is clearly needed. A complete characterization of all factorizations of inner functions is available in terms of nonnegative definite solutions of a homogeneous Riccati equation or in terms of invariant subspaces of a linear transformation. For more on this, see Willems (1971), Finesso and Picci (1982), Picci and Pinzoni (1994) and Fuhrmann (1995).

External and internal spectral factors are obviously defined in an extremely opposite way. The analysis of the general spectral factors will depend to a large extent on a full understanding of the classes of both external and internal spectral factors.

The next proposition is a characterization of minimal, stable, internal spectral factors.

Proposition 14: Let $W$ be a $p \times m$ minimal, stable spectral factor. Let $Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}$ be the inner functions determined via Proposition 13. Then $W$ is an internal spectral factor if and only if we have

$$
Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=Q_{+}^{e}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0  \tag{80}\\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

and, up to a right unitary factor for $Q^{\prime}$ and the inverse left factor for $Q^{\prime \prime}$, the factorizations (80) are in a bijective correspondence with normalized inner factorizations of $Q_{+}$, that is factorizations $Q_{+}=Q_{1} Q_{2}$ with $Q_{i}$ normalized inner functions.

Proof: From $W=W_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime}$ and the fact that the last $m-m_{0}$ columns of both $W$ and $W_{-}^{e}$ are zero, it follows that

$$
Q^{\prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{1} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

for some $m_{0} \times m_{0}$ inner function $Q_{1}$. A similar argument holds for $Q^{\prime \prime}$. Clearly, we have $Q_{1} Q_{2}=Q_{+}$.

Corollary 5: Let $W$ be a $p \times m_{0}$ minimal, stable spectral factor. Then $W$ is necessarily internal.

Proof: As in the proof of Proposition 14, we have $W=W_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime}$ with

$$
Q^{\prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{1} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

for some $m_{0} \times m_{0}$ inner function $Q_{1}$. Necessarily $Q_{1}$ is a left factor of $Q_{+}$, i.e. $W$ is internal.

From the proof of Theorem 4 it becomes clear that minimal, stable, external spectral factors of size $p \times m$ of a given spectral density $\Phi$ are related to factorizations of an inner function of the form

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
Q & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

having special coprimeness properties. We proceed to formalize these properties in the following definition.
Definition 5: Let $Q$ be an $m_{0} \times m_{0}$ inner function and let $R$ be an $\left(m-m_{0}\right) \times\left(m-m_{0}\right)$ inner function equivalent to $Q$. We say that a factorization

$$
Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
Q & 0  \tag{81}\\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

into the product of two $m \times m$ inner functions is a balanced factorization if $Q^{\prime}$ is left coprime and $Q^{\prime \prime}$ right coprime with both

$$
Q^{e}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

Note that for the factorization (81) to be balanced, we need four coprimeness conditions. However, two of them are trivially satisfied. In fact, by the construction in Theorem 3, we have the left coprimeness of $Q^{\prime}, R^{e}$ as well as the right coprimeness of $Q^{\prime \prime}, R^{e}$.

In the following we will need the next lemma.
Lemma 4: Let

$$
Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
Q & 0  \tag{82}\\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

Let, given an inner function $Q$, the unitary map $\tau_{\tilde{Q}}: H_{r}(Q) \rightarrow H_{r}(\widetilde{Q})$ be defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(f \tau_{\widetilde{Q}}\right)(s)=f(-s) \widetilde{Q}(s) \tag{83}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $\widetilde{Q}(s)=Q(\bar{s})^{*}$. Then
(1) Figures 6 and 7 are commutative


Figure 6.


Figure 7.
(2) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{r}
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \tau_{\tilde{Q}^{\prime} \tilde{Q}^{\prime}}=H_{r}\left(\widetilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) \tilde{Q}^{\prime}  \tag{84}\\
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \tau_{\tilde{Q}^{\prime} \tilde{Q}^{\prime}}=H_{r}\left(\widetilde{Q}^{\prime}\right)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

## Proof:

(1) From the factorization (82) it follows that

$$
\left.\tau_{\tilde{Q}} \tilde{Q}^{\prime}=\tau^{\tilde{Q}_{+}} \begin{array}{c}
0 \\
0
\end{array} \tilde{R}^{2}\right)=\tau_{\tilde{Q}_{+}^{e}} \oplus \tau_{\widetilde{R}^{e}}
$$

Moreover, since $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \oplus H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)$, any $f \in H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$ can be written as $f=\left(f_{1} f_{2}\right)$ with $f_{1} \in H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)$ and $f_{2} \in H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)$. With this we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
F \tau_{\tilde{Q}^{n}} \tilde{Q}^{2}
\end{aligned} \tau_{1}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
f_{1} & \left.f_{2}\right)\left(\tau_{\tilde{Q}_{+}^{e}} \oplus \tau_{\tilde{R}^{c}}\right) \tau_{1} \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
f_{1} \tau \widetilde{Q}_{+}^{e} & f_{2} \tau \widetilde{R}^{e}
\end{array}\right) \tau_{1} \\
& =f_{1} \tau_{\tilde{Q}_{+}^{e}}=f \tau_{1} \tau_{\tilde{Q}_{+}^{e}}
\end{array}\right.
$$

The commutativity of the second diagram is proved similarly.
(2) Let $f \in H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$. Then $f \tau_{\tilde{Q}}^{\prime \prime} \tilde{Q}^{\prime}=\left(f \tau_{\tilde{Q}_{\mu}}\right) \widetilde{Q}^{\prime}$. Since $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)_{\tau_{Q^{\prime}}}=H_{r}\left(\widetilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right)$, the first equality is proved. The proof of the second equality is similar.

The following proposition is a geometric characterization of balanced factorizations. It is advisable, in following the arguments, to refer to figure 5.

Proposition 15: Let $W$ be a minimal, stable spectral factor. Then, with the notation of Theorem 4, we have
(1) The factorization

$$
Q z Q_{z}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
Q & 0  \tag{85}\\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

is a balanced factorization.
(2) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
H_{r}\left(Q \not z^{\prime}\right) \pi_{1}=H_{r}(Q)  \tag{86}\\
H_{r}(Q \nLeftarrow) \pi_{\underline{l}}=H_{r}(R)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(3) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{z}\right) \pi_{1}=H_{r}(\bar{Q})  \tag{87}\\
H_{r}\left(\bar{Q} \not z^{\prime}\right) \pi_{\underline{\underline{Q}}}=H_{r}(R)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(4) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
\pi_{1} H_{c}\left(Q_{2}\right)=H_{c}\left(Q^{e}\right)  \tag{88}\\
\tau_{2} H_{c}(Q z)=H_{c}\left(R^{e}\right)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(5) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1} & =H_{r}(Q Q ヶ)  \tag{89}\\
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \pi_{1} & =H_{r}\left(Q_{\imath}\right) Q ヶ Q
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(6) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{\underline{2}} & =H_{r}(R)  \tag{90}\\
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \pi_{2} & =H_{r}(R)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(7) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right) \pi_{\underline{\underline{E}}} & =H_{r}(R)  \tag{91}\\
H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right) \overline{Q^{\prime}} \overline{\underline{\sigma}} & =H_{r}(R)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(8) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}(Q Q \uparrow) \cap H_{r}(Q \uparrow Q) Q \uparrow=H_{r}(Q) Q \uparrow \tag{92}
\end{equation*}
$$

or equivalently

$$
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1} \cap H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \pi_{1}=H_{r}(Q) Q \uparrow
$$

(9) The reduced maps $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \mid \pi_{1}$ and $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \mid \pi_{1}$ are injective.
(10) The reduced maps $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)}$ and $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \mid P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)}$ are injective, and moreover, we have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)} & =H_{r}(Q Q\ulcorner )  \tag{93}\\
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)} & =H_{r}\left(Q_{\imath} Q\right) Q\ulcorner
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(11) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \tag{94}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. $H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)}$ is surjective.

## Proof:

(1) That the factorization (85) is balanced was proved in Theorem 4.
(2) From the factorization (85) it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(Q \not z^{\prime}\right) \subset H_{r}\left(Q 2 Q \not z^{\prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q^{e}\right) \oplus H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \tag{95}
\end{equation*}
$$

and hence

$$
H_{r}\left(Q \mathscr{z}^{\prime}\right) \pi_{1} \subset H_{r}\left(Q \mathcal{Z} Q \not z^{\prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q^{e}\right)
$$

From the fact that the factorization is balanced, we conclude the equivalence of the inner functions $Q z$ and $Q$, and hence it suffices to show that Ker $H_{r}\left(Q^{z}\right) \mid \pi_{1}=\{0\}$. Indeed, assume $\left.f=\left(f_{1} f_{2}\right) \in H_{r}(Q \not)^{\prime}\right)$ and $f \pi_{1}=0$,
i.e. $\quad f_{1}=0$. Thus, from (95), necessarily $\quad\left(0 f_{2}\right) \in H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)$. So $f \in H_{r}\left(Q^{q}\right) \cap H_{r}\left(R^{\ell}\right)$. But this intersection is zero by the right coprimeness of $Q \xi$ and $R^{e}$.
(3) This is proved in a completely analogous way to the proof of the previous assertion.
(4) This is proved in a completely analogous way to the proof of the previous assertion.
(5) From $Q^{\prime \prime}=Q_{z} Q_{r}$ it follows that $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q_{z}\right) Q_{r} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q_{r}\right)$. We apply now $\pi_{1}$ to this equality, noting that $\pi_{\mathrm{r}}$ commutes with multiplication by $Q_{r}$ and that $H_{r}\left(Q_{r}\right) \pi_{i}=H_{r}\left(Q_{r}\right)$. Hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1} & =H_{r}\left(Q_{r}\right) Q_{r} \pi_{r}+H_{r}\left(Q_{r}\right) \\
& =H_{r}\left(Q_{r}\right) \pi_{r} Q_{r} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q_{r}\right) \\
& =H_{r}(Q) Q_{r} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q_{r}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q Q_{r}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Here we used the previously established equality $H_{r}\left(Q_{z}\right) \pi_{r}=H_{r}(Q)$.
To prove the second equality in (89), we apply the unitary map $\tau_{\tilde{Q}+}$ to the first, using the commutativity of figure 6 . We compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}\left(\tilde{Q}_{\ell} \tilde{Q}\right) \tilde{Q}_{\mathcal{Q}} & =H_{r}\left(Q Q_{饣}\right) \tau_{\tilde{Q}_{+}}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1} \tau_{\tilde{Q}_{+}} \\
& =H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \tau_{\tilde{Q}, \tilde{Q}^{\prime}}, \pi_{1}=H_{r}\left(\tilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) \tilde{Q}^{\prime} \tau_{1}
\end{aligned}
$$

This is equivalent to the statement, using duality and starting from the factorization

$$
\tilde{Q}^{\prime} \tilde{Q}^{\prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\tilde{Q}_{+} & 0 \\
0 & \tilde{R}
\end{array}\right)
$$

(6) As before, from $Q^{\prime \prime}=Q_{k} Q$ r it follows that $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q_{z}\right) Q^{\Re} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{r}\right)$. To this equality we apply now the projection $\pi \underline{\underline{E}}$ and use the second equality in (86) to get

$$
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{\underline{L}}=H_{r}\left(Q_{\S}\right)\left(Q_{饣} \pi_{\underline{E}}=H_{r}\left(Q_{\S}\right) \pi_{\underline{E}}=H_{r}(R)\right.
$$

Using Lemma 4 , we apply to the previous equality the unitary map $\tau_{\tilde{R}}$ to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H_{r}(\widetilde{R})=H_{r}(R) \tau_{\widetilde{R}}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \overleftarrow{\sigma}_{\underline{-}} \tau_{\tilde{R}} \\
& =H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)_{\tau \widetilde{Q}, \widetilde{Q}}, \pi_{\underline{\underline{E}}}=H_{r}\left(\widetilde{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) \widetilde{Q^{\prime}} \pi_{\underline{\underline{E}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

This is equivalent to the second equality.
(7) This is proved analogously.
(8) Follows directly from the equalities in (89). In fact

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}\left(Q Q^{\Re}\right) \cap H_{r}\left(Q_{1} Q\right) Q_{\uparrow} & =\left[H_{r}(Q) Q_{\xi} \oplus H_{r}(Q \xi)\right] \cap\left[H_{r}\left(Q_{\uparrow}\right) Q Q_{\xi} \oplus H_{r}(Q) Q^{\xi}\right] \\
& =H_{r}(Q) Q
\end{aligned}
$$

as clearly $H_{r}\left(Q^{\xi}\right) \perp H_{r}\left(Q_{i}\right) Q Q \xi$.
(9) Using (89), it suffices to show that $\operatorname{dim} H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H_{r}(Q Q \%)$. Now $Q^{\prime \prime}=Q \notin Q r$ and so $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}(Q \nless) Q r \oplus H_{r}(Q \mu)$, which implies the equality $\operatorname{dim} H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=\operatorname{deg} \operatorname{det} Q \not{ }^{\prime}+\operatorname{deg} \operatorname{det} Q r$. Now, the fact that the factorization (85) is balanced implies the equality $\operatorname{deg} \operatorname{det} Q z=\operatorname{deg} \operatorname{det} Q$. Since $\operatorname{dim} H_{r}(Q Q r)=\operatorname{deg} \operatorname{det} Q+\operatorname{deg} \operatorname{det} Q r$ the result follows.
(10) Clearly, $H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \subset H_{+}^{2} \pi_{\dot{H}}$ and therefore $P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)}=\pi_{1} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)}$. Applying this to the equality $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1}=H_{r}(Q Q \uparrow)$, and noting that $H_{r}(Q Q \uparrow) \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)$, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)} & =H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)} \\
& =H_{r}(Q Q 饣) P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)}=H_{r}(Q Q \uparrow)
\end{aligned}
$$

As we saw that $\operatorname{dim} H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=\operatorname{dim} H_{r}\left(Q Q{ }^{\prime}\right)$, the statement is proved.
(11) Given a Hilbert space $H$ with subspaces $U, V$, let $P_{U}, P_{V}$ be the respective orthogonal projections. Then a simple computation yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(P_{V} \mid U\right)^{*}=P_{U} \mid V \tag{96}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular, if $P_{V} \mid U$ is injective, $P_{U} \mid V$ is surjective. Thus the statement follows from the preceding one.

We wish to emphasize one point which may be confusing exactly to those readers that have some intuition in the functional approach to geometric control theory. Given two arbitrary inner functions $Q^{\prime \prime}$ and $Q_{+}^{e}$ of the same size, then, in general, $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)}$ is not a coinvariant subspace of $H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)$, but, as will be shown in a forthcoming paper, a controlled invariant, inner stabilizable subspace with respect to a natural controllable pair associated with $Q_{+}^{e}$. Equation (93) shows that under our assumptions and the construction of $Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}$ in Proposition 13, this subspace is actually coinvariant. This observation is crucial for the later analysis of the partial ordering of the set of minimal, stable spectral factors. Also, we point out that the question of existence of balanced factorizations will be addressed in $\S 7$.
Corollary 6: With the notation of Proposition 15, we have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{c}
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{\mathrm{r}}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q Q^{r}\right)  \tag{1}\\
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \pi_{1}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q_{1} Q\right) Q^{2}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

and

$$
\left.\begin{array}{c}
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \sigma_{\underline{E}}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) P_{H_{r}(R)}=H_{r}(R)  \tag{98}\\
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \sigma_{\underline{E}}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}(R)}=H_{r}(R)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(2)

$$
\left.\begin{array}{c}
H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1}=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{-}^{e}\right)}=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q} \bar{Q}_{\uparrow}\right)  \tag{99}\\
\left.H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right) \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} \pi_{1}=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right) \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{e}\right.}\right)=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{\uparrow} \bar{Q}\right) \bar{Q}_{\uparrow}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

and

Proof: (97) follows from equations (89) and (93).
To prove (98) we use the equalities (90). Note that the inclusion $H_{r}(R) \subset H_{+}^{2} \sigma_{r}$ implies $f \tau_{6} P_{H_{r}(R)}=f P_{H_{r}(R)}$ for all $f \in H_{+}^{2}$. Therefore

$$
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime} P_{H_{r}(R)}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \pi_{1} P_{H_{r}(R)}=H_{r}(R) P_{H_{r}(R)}=H_{r}(R)
$$

and similarly

$$
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) P_{H_{r}(R)}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi \underline{\sigma} P_{H_{r}(R)}=H_{r}(R) P_{H_{r}(R)}=H_{r}(R)
$$

Corollary 7: With the notation of Proposition 15, we have
(1) $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{4}=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)$ if and only if $Q^{\prime}, Q_{+}^{e}$ are left coprime.
(2) $H_{r}\left(Q^{\circ}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \pi_{1}=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)$ if and only if $Q^{\prime \prime}, Q_{+}^{e}$ are right coprime.
(3) Both equalities hold if and only if $W$ is external.

We saw that, given a minimal, stable spectral factor $W$, the inner functions $Q_{1}$ and $Q r$ parametrize the number of internal antistable and stable zeros of $W$ respectively. Thus the previous corollary can be restated in these terms.

Corollary 8: Let $W$ be as in Proposition 15. Then
(1) $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{4}=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)$ if and only if $W$ has no internal antistable zeros.
(2) $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \tau_{\underline{2}}=H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)$ if and only if $W$ has no internal stable zeros.
(3) $W$ is an external spectral factor if and only if the factorization (65) is balanced which in turn is equivlent to the conditions

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1}=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \\
& H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{\underline{E}}=H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

The previous results dealt with the geometry of coinvariant and semiinvariant subspaces related to the zeros of a spectral factor $W$, i.e. to the inner functions appearing in Theorem 4. The situation gets more intricate as soon as we add to this the pole structure. This means that we also consider the DSS factorizations of the spectral factor $W$, that is we study also spaces associated with the inner function $K$. Of particular interest is, using the notation of Theorem 4, the space $H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}$ which we associate with the spectral factor $W$. The full study of these spaces will be given in $\S 6$. The following results, which reflect some of the results of Corollary 6 will be used in later sections.

Lemma 5: With the notation of Theorem 4, and assuming the factorizations

$$
Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad \bar{Q}^{\prime} \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q- & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

are balanced, we have
(1) The restricted projection map $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \mid P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}$ is injective. Equivalently

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime}}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \tag{101}
\end{equation*}
$$

(2) The restricted projected map $H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}$ is injective. Equivalently

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}(K) Q 川 P_{H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)}=H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \tag{102}
\end{equation*}
$$

(3) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}(K) Q " Q_{\underline{\underline{6}}}=H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \tag{103}
\end{equation*}
$$

(4) The restricted projection map $H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e} \mid P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}$ is injective. Equivalently

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e}}=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e} \tag{104}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Proof:

(1) We show (101). By Corollary 3, we know that

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \tag{105}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now $H_{r}(K) P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right)$ if and only if $H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime}}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime}$. Since $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$ is orthogonal to both $H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}$ and $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime}$, the last equality is equivalent to $H_{r}\left(K Q^{\prime \prime}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$ or to

$$
H_{r}\left(K Q^{\prime \prime}\right) P_{H_{r}}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}\right) P_{H_{+}}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)=H_{r}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

Thus, it suffices to show that

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \tag{106}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)}=H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \tag{107}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the orthogonality of $H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$ and $H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)$, we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)} & =\left[H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e} \oplus H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)\right] P_{H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)}=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)} \\
& =H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)}=H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Here we used (100).
Similarly, using (105),

As the opposite inclusion is trivially satisfied, we have the equality.
(2) Since the subspaces $H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}$ and $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$ are orthogonal, we have $H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \mid P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)}=0$. Using this, as well as equality (101), we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}\right)} & =H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \Psi H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)} \\
& =H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}\left[P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime}}+P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)}\right] \\
& =H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime}}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime}
\end{aligned}
$$

This can be rewritten as

$$
H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{1}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime}
$$

To the last equality we apply the projection $P_{H_{r}(R)}$, noting that, for all $f \in H_{+}^{2}$, we have

$$
\left.f P_{H_{r}\left(\begin{array}{l}
Q_{+} \\
0 \\
0
\end{array}\right.}^{0} \begin{array}{l}
R
\end{array}\right) P_{H_{r}(R)}=f P_{H_{r}(R)}
$$

to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}(R)} & =H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{l}}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) P_{H_{r}(R)} \\
& =H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}(R)}=H_{r}(R)
\end{aligned}
$$

In the last line we used (98).
(3) The inclusion

$$
H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \subset H_{r}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
K_{-} Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

implies the equality

$$
\left.H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{1}} \begin{array}{cc}
K Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

So, using (102), we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H_{r}(K) Q " \pi_{\underline{I}}=H_{r}(K) Q " P_{H_{P}}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
K Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) \pi_{\underline{E}} \\
& =H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}\left[P_{H_{r}\left(K^{e} Q_{+}^{e}\right)}+P_{H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)}\right]^{\underline{K}} \\
& =H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)} \pi_{\underline{2}}=H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \pi_{\underline{6}}=H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

(4) The proof is analogous to the proof of the first statement and we omit it.

The previous result can have many equivalent restatements. Intuitively, they all state that there is an excess of poles over zeros.
Corollary 9: Let We a minimal, stable spectral factor. Then with the notation of Theorem 4,
(1) The Toeplitz operator $\tau_{K(Q))^{*}}^{r}=\mathcal{T}^{r}(\bar{Q} \cdot)^{*} K^{e}$ is injective.
(2) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime}+H_{-}^{2} K=L^{2} \tag{108}
\end{equation*}
$$

(3) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{+}^{2} K \cap H_{-}^{2} Q^{\prime}=\{0\} \tag{109}
\end{equation*}
$$

(4) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{+}^{2} K \cap H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right)=\{0\} \tag{110}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof: By Lemma 5, we have the injectivity of the projection map $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \mid P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}$ which is equivalent to the injectivity of the projection map $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}(K)}$. We apply now Theorem 1 to infer (108), (109) and (110).

We proceed to prove an important geometric result whose control significance will be stated at the end of the proof.
Theorem 5: Let $W$ be a minimal, stable spectral factor. Then, with the notation of Theorem 5.3, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}(R) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \subset H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \cap H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\Sigma}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right) \bar{Q}_{\Gamma} K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Proof:

(1) We use the factorization

$$
Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

to conclude

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) & =H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) \\
& =H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \oplus H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \supset H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} & =H-r\left(Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} \\
& =H_{r}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} \supset H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly, we have $K Q^{\prime \prime}=\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}$ and hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} & =\left[H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right) K Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e}\right] P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} \\
& =\left[H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right) \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right)\right] K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} \\
& =H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime} \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} \\
& =H_{r}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{-} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} \\
& =\left[H_{r}\left(Q_{-}^{e}\right) K_{+}^{e} \oplus H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)\right] P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} \supset H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}
\end{aligned}
$$

From these two inclusions we obtain the inclusion

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}(R) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \subset H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \cap H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right) K_{+} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \tag{113}
\end{equation*}
$$

(2) We have

$$
Q_{2} Q_{z}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
Q & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

Since $Q 2, Q$ are left coprime and $Q z, Q$ are right coprime, we obtain the equivalence of the inner functions $Q, R, Q \ell, Q^{\prime}$. Now we consider the direct sum decomposition $H_{r}\left(Q_{2} Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q_{2}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$ which, by the orthogonality of $H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}$ and $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$, leads to $H_{r}\left(Q^{\ell}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}=$ $H_{r}\left(Q^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q " .}$. But we also have

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}\left(Q \leqslant Q^{\prime \prime}\right) & =H_{r}\left(Q^{2} Q z Q r\right)=H\left[\left(\begin{array}{ll}
Q & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) Q r\right] \\
& =H_{r}\left(Q^{e}\right) Q^{\ell} \oplus H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \supset H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence

$$
H_{r}\left(Q_{2}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}(K) Q "}=H_{r}\left(Q_{2} Q ״\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q "} \supset H_{r}\left(R^{Q}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q "}
$$

Similarly, note that

$$
H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{z}\right) \bar{Q}_{z} \bar{Q}_{r} K_{+}^{e}=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{z}\right) \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{z}\right) K Q^{\prime \prime}
$$

So $H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{z}\right) K Q^{\prime \prime} \subset \operatorname{Ker} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}}$ and hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{\nless e}\right) \bar{Q}_{\uparrow} K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}=\left[H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{\mathcal{L}}\right) \bar{Q}_{\mathcal{L}} \bar{Q}_{\uparrow} K_{+}^{e} \oplus H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{\xi}\right) \bar{Q}_{\uparrow} K_{+}^{e}\right] P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} \\
& \left.=\left[H_{r}(\bar{Q} \xi) \bar{Q} \not z \oplus H_{r}(\bar{Q} \not)^{2}\right)\right] \bar{Q}_{\uparrow} K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}(K) Q "} \\
& =H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{2} \bar{Q}_{Z}\right) \bar{Q}_{饣}{ }^{\imath} K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} \\
& =\left[H_{r}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) \bar{Q} \uparrow K_{+}^{e}\right] P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \\
& =\left[H_{r}\left(Q^{e}\right)\left(\bar{Q} \mathcal{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{e} K_{+}^{e} \oplus H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)\right] P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \\
& \supset H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q "}
\end{aligned}
$$

These two inclusions prove the inclusion

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \subset H_{r}\left(Q^{\ell}\right) Q^{\prime} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \cap H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\sharp}\right) \bar{Q} \upharpoonright K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \tag{114}
\end{equation*}
$$

By Lemma 5, the projection $P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}$ is injective on $H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)$, which implies

$$
\operatorname{dim}\left[H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q "}\right]=\operatorname{dim}\left[H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)\right]
$$

Also, by Theorem 4, the inner functions $R, Q \varepsilon, \bar{Q} z$ are equivalent and hence in particular

$$
\operatorname{dim}\left[H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)\right]=\operatorname{dim} H_{r}\left(Q_{z}\right) Q^{\prime \prime}=\operatorname{dim} H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{\nless}\right) \bar{Q}_{饣} K_{+}^{e}
$$

Therefore the inclusion (114) forces the equality (112).
For the case of external spectral factors, the inclusion (111) can be strengthened to give.

Corollary 10: Let $W$ be a minimal, stable, external spectral factor. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} \tag{115}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof: By Theorem 5, we have

$$
H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} \cap H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}
$$

But using the injectivity of the projection $P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}}$ on the three subspaces and the fact that they all have the same dimension, the equality follows.

In a sense not made explicit in this paper, the space $H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}$ can be used as a natural state space for a state space realization of the spectral factor $W$. This is based on the realization theory developed in Fuhrmann (1981) and we refer to it as the shift realization. Thus the subspaces $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}(K) Q ",} H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+} P_{H_{r}(K) Q " \text {, }}$, $H_{r}\left(Q_{z}\right) Q^{\prime} P_{H_{r}(K) Q »}, H_{r}\left(Q^{\ell}\right) Q \uparrow K_{+}^{e} P_{H_{r}(K) Q}$, and $H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q ״}$, are all special subspaces of $H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}$, and it is natural to inquire as to their system theoretic significance. Without going into the details, we just state here that, with respect to the shift realization, the first two are the maximal output nulling, inner stabilizable subspace and the maximal output nulling, inner antistabilizable subspace respectively, whereas the last three are different representations of the maximal output nulling, reachability subspace. Moreover the inclusion in (111) can be shown to be actually an equality. A state space approach to these results will be given in Gombani and Fuhrmann (1998), while a functional approach to these characterizations will be presented in Fuhrmann (1998).

So far, we have bypassed the question of the existence of balanced factorizations. The following proposition shows that plenty of balanced factorizations exist.

Proposition 16: Let $Q_{+}$be an inner function and let $R$ be an inner function equivalent to it. Then there exists a balanced factorization

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0  \tag{116}\\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)=Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}
$$

Proof: By the assumption of equivalence, there exist, necessarily inner, matrix functions $T, S$ in $H_{+}^{\infty}$ such that the intertwining relation

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{+} T=S R \tag{117}
\end{equation*}
$$

holds, with $Q_{+}, S$ left coprime and $T, R$ right coprime. Equation (117), see Fuhrmann (1981) for the details, gives rise to an $H_{+}^{\infty}$-isomorphism $Z: H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \rightarrow H_{r}(R)$, defined by

$$
f Z=f T P_{H_{r}(R)}
$$

The isomorphism is in the sense that, for every $\phi \in H_{+}^{\infty}$ and $f \in H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)$, we have

$$
f \phi P_{+} T P_{H_{r}(R)}=f T P_{H_{r}(R)} \phi P_{+}
$$

The adjoint map, $Z^{*}: H_{r}(R) \rightarrow H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)$, is given by

$$
g Z^{*}=g T^{*} P_{+}
$$

and we have, again for every $\phi \in H_{+}^{\infty}$, that

$$
g \phi^{*} P_{+} T^{*} P_{+}=g P_{+} T^{*} P_{+} \phi^{*}
$$

Next, we define a subspace of

$$
H_{r}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \oplus H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)
$$

by

$$
\mathcal{v}=\left\{\left(g Z^{*} \quad g\right) \mid g \in H_{r}(R)\right\}
$$

Clearly, $\mathcal{V}$ is a coinvariant subspace. In fact, given $\phi \in H_{+}^{\infty}$, we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(g Z^{*} P_{+} g\right) \phi^{*} P_{+} & =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
g T^{*} P_{+} \phi^{*} P_{+} & g \phi^{*} P_{+}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
g \phi^{*} P_{+} T^{*} P_{+} & g \phi^{*} P_{+}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
g_{1} Z^{*} & \left.g_{1}\right) \in \mathcal{V}
\end{array}\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

where $g_{1}=g \phi^{*} P_{+} \in H_{r}(R)$. Thus, by Beurling's theorem, there exists an inner function $Q^{\prime \prime}$ for which $\mathcal{V}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$. This implies the factorization (116).

We show that necessarily, the factorization (116) is balanced. Clearly, by construction, we have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
v \pi_{1}=v P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)  \tag{118}\\
v \pi \underline{\varepsilon}=v P_{P_{r}\left(R_{+}^{e}\right)}=H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

If $Q^{\prime \prime}, Q_{+}^{e}$ are not right coprime, we set $Q^{\prime \prime} \wedge_{R} Q_{+}^{e}=Q$. Thus there exist a factorization $Q^{\prime \prime}=Q \not Q^{\prime}$ and hence $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q \Re \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right)$. Clearly this implies that $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi \underline{\sigma}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q \mu \pi \underline{\sigma}$ cannot be equal to $H_{r}(R)$, in contradiction to (118). The other coprimeness conditions are proved similarly.

We can give now a characterization of minimal, stable, external spectral factors.
Theorem 6: There is a bijective correspondence between
(1) Minimal, external $p \times m$ spectral factors.
(2) Balanced factorizations of inner functions of the form

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0  \tag{119}\\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

with $R \simeq Q_{+}$being an $\left(m-m_{0}\right) \times\left(m-m_{0}\right)$ inner function.
(3) The set of all $H_{+}^{\infty}$-isomorphisms from $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$ onto $H_{r}(R)$, with $R \simeq Q_{+}$being an $\left(m-m_{0}\right) \times\left(m-m_{0}\right)$ inner function.

Proof: Assume $W$ is a minimal, stable, $p \times m$ external spectral factor. By Theorem 4, and using its notaton, we have the existence of a factorization of the form (119) which, by Definition 5, is balanced.

Conversely, let (119) be any balanced factorization. Such factorizations exist by Proposition 16. Define now $W=W_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime}$. Clearly $W$ is a stable spectral factor. Since $W Q^{\prime \prime}=W_{+}^{e}$, it has to be minimal. Clearly this correspondence is bijective.

From Proposition 16 it follows that to each such $H_{+}^{\infty}$-isomorphism there corresponds an essentially unique balanced factorization.

Conversely, the balanced factorization (119), can be written as $Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=Q_{+}^{e} R$. Using the coprimeness conditions, we can embed this equality in a doubly coprime factorization. This implies the existence of rational matrices $L, M$ satisfying $Q^{\prime \prime} L=M R^{e}$. Define a map $Z: H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \rightarrow H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)$ by $f Z=f L P_{H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)}$. Using the left coprimeness of $Q^{\prime \prime}, M$ and the right coprimeness of $L, R^{e}$ which follow from the construction of a doubly coprime factorization, the map $Z$ is indeed an $H_{+}^{\infty}$ isomorphism. Note that the doubly coprime factorization is not unique, but the intertwining map $Z$ is. Thus there exists a corresponding unique isomorphism between the set of balanced factorizations and the set of $H_{+}^{\infty}$-isomorphisms from $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$ onto $H_{r}(R)$. Now, by Theorem 4 and using the fact that $W$ is external, we have the equivalence of $Q^{\prime \prime}$ and $Q_{+}$. Fix any $H_{+}^{\infty}$-isomorphism of $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$ and $H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)$ and the result follows by transitivity.

Theorem 6 leads immediately to a full parametrization of the set $w^{m}$.
Theorem 7: There is a bijective correspondence between
(1) The set $w^{m}$ of all $p \times m$, minimal, stable spectral factors.
(2) Factorizations of the form

$$
Q_{1} Q_{2} Q_{k} Q_{r}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

where $Q_{+}^{e}=Q \uparrow Q Q \uparrow$ with all factors block diagonal of the form

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
* & 0 \\
0 & I_{m-m_{0}}
\end{array}\right)
$$

and

$$
Q 2 Q z=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
Q & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

is a balanced factorization with $R$ any $\left(m-m_{0}\right) \times\left(m-m_{0}\right)$ inner function satisfying $Q \simeq R$. All inner functions are assumed to be normalized at infinity.

Proof: Follows from Theorems 4 and 6.
As a result of Theorem 6, it is clear that the existence of a $p \times m$ external spectral factor is dependent on $m$. Indeed we have the following.

Corollary 11: Let $\Phi$ be a rank mo spectral function. Then there exists a $p \times m$ external spectral factor if and only if $m-m_{0}$ is greater or equal to the number of nontrivial inner invariant factors of $Q_{+}$.

Proof: The inner function $R$ has to be chosen to be equivalent to $Q_{+}$, thus necessarily it has the same number of non-trivial inner invariant factors as $Q_{+}$ and its dimension has to be at least equal to that number.

We promised in $\S 3$ to give a localized version of the phase function and this we proceed to do. To this end, we need first the following.

Definition 6: Let $W_{1}$ and $W_{2}$ be two internal spectral factors. We say that the $W_{1} \leq W_{2}$ if there exists an inner function $Q$ such that $W_{2}=W_{1} Q$.
Lemma_ 6: Let $W_{1}, W_{2}$ be two, minimal stable internal spectral factors. Let $W_{i}=\bar{W}_{\underline{i}} K_{i}$ be the DSS factorizations over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Assume $W_{1} \leq W_{2}$, i.e. $W_{1} Q=W_{2}$, and let $\bar{Q}$ be the inner function satisfying $\bar{Q} K_{2}=K_{1} Q$. Defining the local phase function by

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{0}\left(W_{1}, W_{2}\right)=\bar{W}_{2}^{L} W_{1} \tag{120}
\end{equation*}
$$

we have

$$
\begin{align*}
\bar{W}_{2} \bar{W}_{2}^{-L} W_{2} & =W_{2}  \tag{121}\\
\bar{W}_{2} \bar{W}_{2}^{-L} W_{1} & =W_{1}  \tag{122}\\
W_{2} W_{2}^{L}{ }^{L} W_{1} & =W_{1}  \tag{123}\\
T_{0}=\bar{W}_{2}^{-}{ }^{L} W_{1}=K_{2} Q^{-1} & =\bar{Q}^{-1} K_{1} \tag{124}
\end{align*}
$$

Proof: By assumption, we have $W_{1} Q=W_{2}$ and

$$
\bar{W}_{2}=W_{2} K_{2}^{*}=W_{1} Q K_{2}^{*}=W_{1} K_{1}^{*} \bar{Q}=\bar{W}_{1} \bar{Q}
$$

Since $\bar{W}_{2}{ }^{L} \bar{W}_{2}=I$, we have $\bar{W}_{2} \bar{W}_{2}{ }^{L} \bar{W}_{2}=\bar{W}_{2}$. Now

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{W}_{2} \bar{W}_{2}^{L} W_{2}=\bar{W}_{2} \bar{W}^{L} \bar{W}_{2} K_{2}=\bar{W}_{2} K_{2}=W_{2} \tag{125}
\end{equation*}
$$

This proves (121). (122) follows, using the fact that $W_{1} Q=W_{2}$. Substituting $W_{2}=W_{1} Q$ in the equality $W_{2} W_{2}{ }^{L} W_{2}=W_{2}$ and eliminating $Q$ leads to (123). Finally, using (123), we compute

$$
T_{0}\left(W_{1}, W_{2}\right)=\bar{W}_{2}^{L} W_{1}=\bar{W}_{2}^{L}\left(W_{2} W_{2}^{L} W_{1}\right)=\left(\bar{W}_{2}^{L} W_{2}\right)\left(W_{2}^{L} W_{1}\right)=K_{2} Q^{-1}
$$

and use the equality $K_{2} Q^{-1}=\bar{Q}^{-1} K_{1}$.
Next we proceed to prove the following version of Proposition 11.
Proposition 17: Let $\Phi$ be a $p \times p$, rank $m_{0}$, weakly coercive, spectral function, and let $W_{1} \leq W_{2}$ be two, minimal, stable, internal spectral factors. Let $W_{i}=\bar{W}_{i} K_{i}$ be the respective DSS factorizations over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Let $Q, \bar{Q}$ be the minimal Mc Millan degree inner functions satisfying $\bar{Q} K_{2}=K_{1} Q$. Then both Toeplitz operators $\mathcal{T}^{c} \bar{W}_{2}^{-L} W_{1}=\mathcal{T}_{K_{2} Q^{*}}^{c}=\mathcal{T}^{c} \bar{Q}^{*} K_{1}$ and $\mathcal{T}^{r} \bar{W}_{2}^{-L} W_{1}$ are injective.
Proof: The proof follows that of Proposition 11. For the injectivity of $\mathcal{T}^{c}{ }_{W_{2}^{-L}}{ }^{L} W_{1}$ we show an explicit left inverse, namely the map $f \mapsto W_{1}^{-L} P+\bar{W}_{2} f$. Indeed, using (122), we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
W_{1}^{-L} P_{+} \bar{W}_{2} P_{+} \bar{W}_{2}^{L} W_{1} f & =W_{1}^{-L} P_{+} \bar{W}_{2} \bar{W}_{2}^{-L} W_{1} f \\
& =W_{1}^{L} P_{+} W_{1} f=W_{1}^{L} W_{1} f=f
\end{aligned}
$$

The injectivity of $\mathcal{T}^{r} \bar{W}_{2}^{L} W_{1}$ follows from Proposition 9.

The previous result indicates that the definition of the phase function can be extended to all spectral factors. In fact, given a Lindquist-Picci pair $W, W$ of minimal spectral factors, then, with the notation of Theorem 4, we can define the associated phase function to be $K\left(Q^{\prime}\right)^{*}=\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*} K_{-}^{e}$. Note that we already proved, in Corollary 9 , the injectivity of the Toeplitz opeator $\mathcal{T}_{K(Q))^{*}}^{r}=\mathcal{T}^{r}{ }_{(\bar{Q},)^{*} K^{e} .}$.

## 6. Minimal Markovian splitting subspaces

Each minimal, stable $p \times m$ spectral factor $W$ has two, coprime, DSS factorizations. With each one there is associated a coinvariant subspace that is a natural state space for a shift based realization of $W$. If we choose to work with a left coprime factorization of $W$ over $H_{-}^{\infty}$ then, as a consequence of Proposition 2, all minimal, stable spectral factors have the same left Douglas-Shapiro-Shields factor. This amounts to the fact that in a realization of any such spectral factor $W$, the matrices $A, C$ can be chosen to be the same. This is the uniform choice of basis, see Caines and Delchamps (1980). It turns out that for our purpose we have to work with right coprime DSS factorizations; in this case, the right denominators, and hence the associated state spaces, do not need to be the same, this fact is peculiar of the multivariable case. This enables us to study the zeros in purely geometric terms. We proceed to explain this association. By Proposition 13, there exists an essentially unique inner function $Q^{\prime \prime}$ such that $W_{+}^{e}=W Q^{\prime \prime}$. On the other hand, $W$ has a right coprime DSS factorization $W=\bar{W} K=\bar{W} K^{-*}$, with $\bar{W}$ necessarily a minimal antistable spectral factor. Let $H_{r}(K)=\left\{H_{+}^{2} K\right\}^{\perp}$ be the coinvariant subspace associated with the inner function $K$. We say that

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{W}=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \tag{126}
\end{equation*}
$$

is the minimal Markovian splitting subspace associated with the minimal spectral factor $W$. Note that all the spaces $H_{r}(K)$ carry isomorphic $H_{+}^{\infty}$-module structures. This is due to the fact that the pole structure of all minimal, stable spectral factors is the same, and they differ only in their zero structure. The particular definition, given in (126) is a result of a normalization, where with $W_{+}$we associate the state space $H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$. We denote by $x^{m}$ the family of all minimal Markovian splitting subspaces associated to minimal, stable, spectral factors of size $p \times m$. In an analogous way we can associate with the antistable factor $\bar{W}$ the state space $X_{\bar{W}}=H_{r}\left(K^{*}\right)\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*}$. We denote by $x^{m}$ the set of all such spaces corresponding to factors of size $p \times m$. At this point our definiton of splitting subspaces is rather formal and devoid of any stochastic interpretation. But it turns out that this is the simplest way to transpose in the Hardy space setting the geometric structure of the stochastic domain, however we omit the details.

The following proposition organizes the information concerning the geometry of the splitting subspaces associated with an arbitrary minimal, stable spectral factor.
Proposition 18: Let $W$ be a minimal, stable spectral factor. Let $W=\bar{W} K$ be its DSS factorization over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Let the inner functions $Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}, Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}$ be determined by Proposition 13. Then we have
(1) The following_are orthogonal direct sum decompositions of the coinvariant subspace $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime} K\right)$

$$
\begin{align*}
H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime} K Q^{\prime \prime}\right) & =H_{r}\left(Q_{-}^{e}\right) K_{+}^{e} \oplus H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \oplus H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \\
& =H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right) \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e} \oplus H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e} \oplus H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \\
& =H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right) K Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \\
& =H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \\
& =H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q_{+}^{e} \oplus H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \oplus H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \tag{127}
\end{align*}
$$

(2) For $L^{2}$ we have the following direct sum decomposition.

$$
\begin{align*}
L^{2} & =H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{-}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime} \\
& =H_{+}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{-}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime} \tag{128}
\end{align*}
$$

(3) Defining the $L^{2}$ subspaces by

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
S_{W}=H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}  \tag{129}\\
\bar{S}_{W}=H_{-}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{W}=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}=S_{W} \cap \bar{S}_{W} \tag{130}
\end{equation*}
$$

The pair $\left(S_{W}, \bar{S}_{W}\right)$ will be called an extended scattering pair for the spectral factor $W$.
(4) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
S_{W}^{\perp}=H_{-}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}  \tag{131}\\
\bar{S}_{W}^{\perp}=H_{+}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
L^{2}=\bar{S}_{W}^{\perp} \oplus X_{W} \oplus S_{W}^{\perp} \tag{132}
\end{equation*}
$$

(5) The projection operators

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}=H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}: H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \rightarrow H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \tag{133}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{O}=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \mid P_{H_{r}\left(K^{e}\right) Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}}: H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \rightarrow H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime} \tag{134}
\end{equation*}
$$

are bijective.
(6) The projection operators

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \mid P_{H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)}: H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \rightarrow H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \tag{135}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \mid P_{H_{r}\left(K^{e}\right) Q \cdot Q^{\prime \prime}}: H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \rightarrow H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime} \tag{136}
\end{equation*}
$$

are bijective.


Figure 8.
(7) We have the following factorization

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}}=\left(H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}\right) \cdot\left(H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \mid P_{H_{r}\left(K^{e}\right) Q^{\cdot} Q^{\prime \prime}}\right) \tag{137}
\end{equation*}
$$

(8) Let $W_{i}, \quad i=\alpha, \beta$ be two minimal, stable spectral factors and let $X_{W_{i}}=H_{r}\left(K_{i}\right) Q_{i \prime \prime}^{\prime \prime}$. Then, with $\mathcal{R}_{i}, \mathcal{O}_{i}$ defined as above, there exists a unique map $Z: H_{r}\left(K_{\beta}\right) Q_{\beta} \rightarrow H_{r}\left(K_{\alpha}\right) Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}$ which makes figure 8 commutative.
thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
Z=\mathcal{R}_{\beta}^{-1} \mathcal{R}{ }_{\alpha}=\mathcal{O}_{\beta} \mathcal{O}_{\alpha}^{-1} \tag{138}
\end{equation*}
$$

(9) We have

$$
\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{\alpha}\right) Q_{\alpha}}\right\|^{2} \leq f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{\beta}\right) Q_{\beta}^{\prime}} \|^{2} \quad \forall f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)
$$

if and only if

$$
\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(K_{\alpha}\right) Q_{幺}}\right\|^{2} \geq g P_{H_{r}\left(K_{\beta}\right) Q_{\beta}} \|^{2} \quad \forall g \in H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q_{+}^{e}
$$

These inequalities characterize the contractivity of the map $Z$.

## Proof:

(1) From the commutativity of figure 4 , we obtain the equality

$$
\bar{Q}^{\prime} K Q^{\prime \prime}=\bar{Q}^{\prime} \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}=K_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=Q_{-}^{e} K_{+}^{e} R^{e}=K_{-}^{e} Q_{+}^{e} R^{e}
$$

and the result follows.
(2) We use the equalities $L^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}=L^{2}, H_{+}^{2}=H_{+}^{2} K \oplus H_{r}(K)$ as well as the fact that multiplication by $Q^{\prime \prime}$ is a unitary map in $L^{2}$.
(3) We compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{W} \cap \bar{S}_{W} & =H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H_{-}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime} \\
& =\left(H_{+}^{2} \cap H_{-}^{2} K\right) Q^{\prime \prime}=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}=X_{W}
\end{aligned}
$$

(4) Since $S_{W}=H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}$ and $L^{2}=H_{+}^{2} Q_{\overline{\prime \prime}} \oplus H_{-}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}$, we conclude that $S_{W}^{\perp}=H_{-}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}$. Similarly, $\bar{S}_{W}=H_{-}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime}$ implies $\bar{S}_{W}^{\perp}=H_{+}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime}$. Thus (132) is equivalent to the second direct sum decomposition in (128).
(5) Since, using Theorem 4, the equivalence of $K_{+}^{e}$ and $K$ implies that the dimension of the state spaces $H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$ and $H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}$ is equal, it suffices to prove that the projection $P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}} \mid H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$ is injective. Now

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Ker} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} & =H_{+}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \\
& =H_{+}^{2} \overline{Q^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$ is orthogonal to $H_{+}^{2} \bar{Q} 川 K_{+}^{e}$, we can compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Ker} H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}} & =H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \cap\left(H_{+}^{2} K Q \Perp H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)\right) \\
& =H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \cap H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \\
& =H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e} \wedge_{R} Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=\{0\}
\end{aligned}
$$

We clearly have $K_{+}^{e} \wedge_{R} Q^{\prime \prime}$, the greatest common right inner divisor of $K_{+}^{e}$ and $Q^{\prime \prime}$ equal to the identity because of the right coprimeness of these two inner functions. In this connection, see Theorem 3.

To prove the injectivity of (134), we show first that figure 9 commutes.
We note that, for $f \in H_{+}^{2}$, we have $f P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}=f Q^{\prime \prime} P_{+} K^{*} P-K Q^{\prime \prime}$. If $f \in H_{r}\left(K^{e}\right) Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}$ then $f=g Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}$ with $g \in H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right)$.

We compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
f P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*} K^{*}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*} & =g Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime} Q^{\prime \prime *} P_{+} K^{*} P_{-} K Q^{\prime \prime}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*} K^{*}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*} \\
& =g Q^{\prime} K^{*} P_{-}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

Going_the other way, and noting that $P_{\bar{H}_{r}\left(K^{*}\right)(\bar{Q} \cdot)^{*}}$ restricted to $H_{-}^{2}$ is given by $h \mapsto h \bar{Q}^{\prime} P_{-} K P_{+} K^{*}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*}$, we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
f Q^{\prime \prime} P_{H_{r}\left(K^{*}\right) \overline{Q^{\prime}}} & =g Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime} Q^{\prime \prime *} Q^{\prime *} K_{-}^{*} \bar{Q}^{\prime} P_{-} K P_{+} K^{*}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*} \\
& =g K_{-}^{*} \bar{Q}^{\prime} P_{-} K P_{+} K^{*}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*} \\
& =g Q^{\prime} K^{*} P_{-} K P_{+} K^{*}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*} \\
& =g Q^{\prime} K^{*} P_{-}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*}
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 9.
for $g Q^{\prime} K^{*} P_{-} \in \bar{H}_{r}\left(K^{*}\right)$ and hence $g Q^{\prime} K^{*} P_{-} K P_{+} K^{*}=g Q^{\prime} K^{*} P_{-} P_{\bar{H}_{r}\left(K^{*}\right)}=$ $g Q^{\prime} K^{*} P_{-}$.

The bijectivity of $P_{\underline{H}_{r}(K) Q^{\prime}}: H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \rightarrow H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}$ is equivalent to the bijectivity of $P_{\bar{H}_{r}\left(K^{*}\right)(\bar{Q},)^{*}}: \bar{H}_{r}\left(K_{-}^{*}\right) \rightarrow \bar{H}_{r}\left(K^{*}\right)\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*}$, and this we proceed to prove. As in the first part,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Ker} P_{\bar{H}_{r}\left(K^{*}\right)\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*} \mid} \bar{H}_{r}\left(K_{-}^{*}\right) & =\bar{H}_{r}\left(K_{-}^{*}\right) \cap\left(\bar{H}_{r}\left(\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*}\right) \oplus H_{-}^{2} K^{*}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*}\right) \\
& =\bar{H}_{r}\left(K_{-}^{*}\right) \cap \bar{H}_{r}\left(\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*}\right)=\{0\}
\end{aligned}
$$

The last equality follows from the left coprimeness of $K_{-}^{e}$ and $\bar{Q}^{\prime}$.
(6) Follows from the previous part by taking adjoints.
(7) This follows from the three direct sum decompositions in (127). For $F \in H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime} K Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$, let

$$
F=f_{1}+f_{2}+f_{3}=g_{1}+g_{2}+g_{3}=h_{1}+h_{2}+h_{3}
$$

be the representations with respect to these direct sum decompositions. Clearly, we have $f_{1}=g_{1}$ and $g_{3}=h_{3}$. Assume now that $F \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$, so we have $F=f_{3}=g_{2}+g_{3}=g_{2}+h_{3}$. This implies $g_{2}=f_{3} P_{H_{r}(K) Q \prime \text {. . Now }}$ $g_{2}=H_{1}+h_{2}$ and so $h_{1}=g_{2} P_{H_{r}\left(K^{e}\right) Q \cdot Q " . ~ B u t ~} f_{3}=g_{2}+h_{3}=h_{1}+h_{2}+h_{3}$ and so we have also $h_{1}=f_{3} P_{H_{r}\left(K^{e}\right) Q \cdot Q " .}$.
(8) By part (5), the maps $\mathcal{R}_{1}, \mathcal{R}_{2}$ are invertible. Computing the adjoints of the maps $\mathcal{O}_{1}, \mathcal{O}_{2}$ we obtain $\mathcal{O}_{i}^{*}=P_{H_{r}\left(K_{i}\right) Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}} \mid H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q_{i} Q_{i \prime \prime}^{\prime \prime}$ and these are also invertible. Hence so are the $\mathcal{O}_{i}$. By part (7) we have $\mathcal{R}_{1} \mathcal{O}_{1}=\mathcal{R}_{2} \mathcal{O}_{2}$, for both are factorizations of $\left.P_{H_{r}\left(K^{e}\right)}\right) Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}: H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \rightarrow H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}$. This implies the equality $Z=\mathcal{R}_{2}^{-1} \mathcal{R}_{1}=\mathcal{O}_{2} \mathcal{O}_{1}^{-1}$. This part of the proof is adapted from Lindquist and Picci (1991).
(9) Assume $\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q_{r}}\right\|^{2} \leq\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right) Q_{r}}\right\|^{2}$ for all $f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$, i.e. $\left\|f \mathcal{R}_{1}\right\| \leq$ $\left\|f \mathcal{R}_{2}\right\|$. Setting $g=d \mathcal{R}_{2}$, we get $\|g Z\|=\left\|g_{\mathcal{R}}^{-1} \mathcal{R}_{1}\right\| \leq\|g\|$, i.e. $Z$ is contractive. But then so is $Z^{*}$, which implies $\left\|f Z^{*}\right\|=\left\|f \mathcal{O}_{1}^{-*} \mathcal{O}_{2}^{*}\right\| \leq\|f\|_{\text {, for all }}$ $f \in H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q^{e}$. Setting $g=f \mathcal{O}_{1}^{*}$, we get $\left\|f \mathcal{O}_{2}^{*}\right\| \leq\left\|f \mathcal{O}_{1}^{*}\right\|$, i.e. $\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right) Q_{\xi}}\right\|^{2} \leq\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q_{\mu}}\right\|^{2}$ for all $f \in H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q_{+}^{e}$.

In (129) we have defined the extended scattering pairs; this is because in the literature, see Lindquist and Picci (1991), a different object is called scattering pair. We briefly introduce some basic facts about it.

First, we need a simple lemma. Let $x, y \in L_{r}^{2}$ : we say that $x$ and $y$ are pointwise orthogonal if $x(i \omega) y^{*}(i \omega)=0$ for all $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$. The pointwise orthogonal complement $Y$ of a subspace $X$ is the set of all vectors $y \in L_{r}^{2}$ which are pointwise orthogonal to all vectors $x \in X$. Let $K$ be an inner function. We set $\pi_{K}^{1}$ to be the orthogonal projection of $L^{2}$ onto the pointwise orthogonal complement of $H_{r}(K)$ and we set $\tau_{K}:=I-\tau_{K}^{1}$. We also set $L_{K}^{2}:=\overline{\operatorname{span}}\left\{\mathrm{e}^{i \omega s} H_{r}(K) ; s \in \mathbb{R}\right\}$.
Lemma 7: We have the following relations:
(1)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Im} \pi_{K}=L_{K}^{2} \tag{139}
\end{equation*}
$$

and
(2)

$$
\begin{equation*}
K \tau_{K}=\tau_{K} K \tag{140}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Proof:

(1) We show that

$$
\operatorname{Im} \pi_{K}^{\perp}=\overline{\operatorname{span}}\left\{\mathrm{e}^{i \omega s} H_{r}(K) ; s \geq 0\right\}^{\perp}
$$

If $f \in \operatorname{Im} \tau_{K}^{\perp}$, then $f$ is pointwise orthogonal to any $g \in H_{r}(K)$; that is $g(i \omega) f(i \omega)^{*} \equiv 0$. But then also $\mathrm{e}^{i \omega s} g(i \omega) f(i \omega)^{*} \equiv 0$ for all $s \in \mathbb{R}$, which implies that $f$ is orthogonal to $L_{K_{\dot{*}}}^{2}$ Conversely, if $f \in\left(L_{K}^{2}\right)^{\perp}$, it means that for each $g \in l_{K}^{2}$, it is $\int_{\square} g(i \omega) f(i \omega)^{*} \mathrm{~d}(\omega)=0$. In particular, since $L_{K}^{2}$ is invariant, we also have $\int_{\mathbb{D}} \mathrm{e}^{i \omega s} g(i \omega) f(i \omega)^{*} \mathrm{~d}(\omega)=0$ which implies that $g(i \omega) f(i \omega)^{*} \equiv 0$.
(2) Let $V_{r}=\left\{v_{1}^{r}, \ldots, v_{k}^{r}\right\}$ be a row basis for $H_{r}(K)$. It is well known that there exist column vectors $c_{i}^{r}$ in $\mathbb{C}^{m}$ such that $K=I+\sum_{i=1}^{r} c_{i}^{r} v_{i}^{r}$. Similarly if $V_{c}=\left\{v_{1}^{c}, \ldots, v_{k}^{c}\right\}$ is a basis for $H_{c}(K)$ then $K=I+\sum_{i=1}^{r=1} v_{i}^{c} c_{i}^{c}$ for suitable row vectors $c_{i}^{c}$. We now exploit the fact that for $f \in H_{r}(K)$, we have $f \tau_{K}=f$ and similarly, for $g \in H_{c}(K)$, we hve $\pi_{K} g=g$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
K(s) \pi_{K} & =\pi_{K}+\sum_{i=1}^{r} c_{i}^{r} v_{i}^{r} \pi_{K}+\sum_{i=1}^{r} c_{i}^{r} v_{i}^{r} \\
& =\pi_{K}+\sum_{i=1}^{r} v_{i}^{c} c_{i}^{c}=\pi_{K}+\pi_{K} \sum_{i=1}^{r} v_{i}^{c} c_{i}^{c}=\pi_{K} K(s)
\end{aligned}
$$

Proposition 19: Let $W$ be a minimal, stable spectral factor. Let_ $W=\bar{W} K$ be its DSS factorization over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Let the inner functions $Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}, Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}$ be determined by Proposition 13. Then we have
(1) Defining the $L_{K}^{2}$ subspaces by

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
\hat{S}_{W}=H_{+}^{2} \pi_{K} Q^{\prime \prime}  \tag{141}\\
\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{S}_{W}=H_{-}^{2} \pi_{K} K Q^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{W}=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}=\hat{S}_{W} \cap \hat{S}_{W} \tag{142}
\end{equation*}
$$

The pair $\left(\hat{S}_{W}, \stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{S}_{W}\right)$ will be called a scattering pair for the spectral factor $W$.
(2) We denote by $\hat{S}_{W}^{\perp}$ the orthogonal complement of $\hat{S}_{W}$ in $L_{K}^{2}$. Similarly, we define $\stackrel{S}{S}_{W}^{\perp}$ to be the orthogonal complement in $L_{K}^{2}$ of $\vec{S}_{W}$. Then we have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
\hat{S}_{W}^{\perp}=H_{-}^{2} \pi_{K} Q^{\prime \prime}  \tag{143}\\
\stackrel{\Delta}{S}_{W}^{\perp}=H_{+}^{2} K \tau_{K} Q^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{K}^{2}=\stackrel{\Delta}{S} \stackrel{\perp}{W} \oplus X_{W} \oplus \hat{S}_{\stackrel{1}{W}}^{\perp} \tag{144}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Proof:

(1) We compute, in view of Lemma 7

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{S}_{W} \cap \stackrel{\Delta}{S}_{W} & =H_{+}^{2} \tau_{k} Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H_{-}^{2} \pi_{k} K Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(H_{+}^{2} \pi_{k} \cap H_{-}^{2} K \pi_{k}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \\
& =\left[\left(H_{r}(K) \oplus H^{2} K \tau_{k}\right) \cap\left(H_{-}^{2} \tau_{k} \oplus H_{r}(K)\right]^{\prime \prime}=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}=X_{W}\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

(2) Since $\hat{S}_{W}=H_{+}^{2} \pi_{k} Q^{\prime \prime}$ and $L_{K_{A}}^{2}=H_{+}^{2} \pi_{k} Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{-}^{2} \pi_{k} Q^{\prime \prime}$, again in view of Lemma $\Delta^{7}$ we conclude that $\hat{S}_{W}^{\perp}=H_{-}^{2} \tau_{k} Q^{\prime \prime}$. Similarly, $S_{W}=H_{-}^{2} \tau_{k} K Q^{\prime \prime}$ implies $\stackrel{\Delta}{S}_{W}=H_{+}^{2} \pi_{k} K Q^{\prime \prime}$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
L_{K}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime} & =\hat{S}_{W} \oplus \hat{S}_{W}^{\perp}=H_{+}^{2} \tau_{k} Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus \hat{S}_{W}^{\perp}=H_{+}^{2} \tau_{k} K Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}(K) \tau_{k} Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus \hat{S}^{\perp} \frac{1}{W} \\
& =H_{+}^{2} \tau_{k} K Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus \hat{S}_{W}^{\perp}=\stackrel{\Delta}{S} \frac{\perp}{W} \oplus H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus \hat{S}_{W}^{\perp}
\end{aligned}
$$

The above proposition illustrates quite clearly the difference of our approach with respect to the one of Lindquist and Picci. We simply take 'larger' spaces to represent our scattering pair: since the main use of scattering pairs is in the state space they generate by their intersection, the results we are obtaining are exactly the same. But, as can be seen comparing the equivalent results in Propositions 18 and 19 the proofs are simpler. So, in the following, a scattering pair will implicitly assume to be extended. For the scattering theory origins of scattering pairs, see Lax and Phillips (1967).

We proceed with a study of the zero structure of the set $w^{m}$ of minimal, stable spectral factors. This is done mainly through a geometric study of the associated set $x^{m}$ of minimal Markovian splitting subspaces. Since in our approach the splitting subspaces have a unified representation, given by (126), the study reduces to a great extent to the arithmetic of inner functions.

We are interested mainly in the parametrization of the set $w^{m}$, for $m_{0} \leq m \leq n+p$. Moreover, the set $w^{m}$ or the corresponding set $x^{m}$ carry with them a natural partial order. In the internal case, i.e. $m=m_{0}$, this partial order is closely related to the factorization of certain inner functions and hence also, see Fuhrmann (1995), to the set of solutions of a certain homogeneous algebraic Riccati equation.

We feel it is instructive to begin our study of the set $w^{m}$ in the special case where the spectral function is of full rank and coercive and the factors are internal, i.e. $m=m_{0}=p$. We denote this set by $\mathcal{w}^{p}$. This case shows the general scheme, and also clarifies the new concepts that have to be introduced for the analysis of the general case.

Without loss of generality, we can assume the normalization $\Phi(\infty)=I$. Thus all regular spectral factors can be assumed to satisfy $W(\infty)=I$ as well. This set has been fully studied, e.g. Fuhrmann (1995). The inner functions $Q_{-}, Q_{+}, K_{-}, K_{+}$are defined as before. Heuristically, we shall say, given spectral factors $W_{1}$ and $W_{2}$, that $W_{1} \leq W_{2}$ if $W_{2}$ is closer to being maximum phase. This can be expressed precisely by saying $W_{2}=W_{1} Q$ for some inner function $Q$, see Definition 6. So, if $W_{1} Q_{i}^{\prime}=W_{+}$, this can be expressed also by saying that $Q_{z}$ is a right factor of $Q_{\uparrow}$. Equivalently, $Q_{1}$ is a left factor of $Q 2$. This leads to other, geometric, characterizations that turn out to
be useful in the generalization to the non-regular case. Moreover, given an inner function $Q_{+}$, the set of left inner factors of $Q_{+}$is clearly partially ordered with $Q_{1} \leq Q_{2}$ if $Q_{1}$ is a left factor of $Q_{2}$. In this set $Q_{+}$is clearly the maximal element and $I$ is the minimal. This order has been expressed in Fuhrmann (1995) via the set of non-negative definite solutions of a homogeneous Riccati equation. It is not surprising that all these orders are equivalent. We express this equivalence in the following.

The set $w^{p}$ can be parametrized in seveal different ways. In fact, by the results of §3, given a normalized, minimal, stable spectral factor, there exists a normalized factorization (i.e. both factors normalized and inner) $Q_{+}=Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}$ such that

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
W_{-} Q^{\prime} & =W  \tag{145}\\
W Q^{\prime \prime} & =W_{+}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

So normalized factorizations of $Q_{+}$are in a bijective correspondence with the elements of the set $w^{p}$, i.e. they parametrize $x^{p}$. Clearly, if $Q_{i} Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}$ are the factorizations of $Q_{+}$associated with $W_{i}$, then $W_{1} \leq W_{2}$ if and only if $Q_{1}$ is a left factor of $Q_{2}$. On the other hand, see Fuhrmann (1995) for the details, if

$$
Q_{+}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
A & B \\
\hline-B^{*} X_{+} & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

with the realization minimal and $X_{+}$the unique positive definite solution of the homogeneous Riccati equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
A^{*} X+X A+X B B^{*} X=0 \tag{146}
\end{equation*}
$$

then an arbitrary normalized right inner factor of $Q_{+}$is given by

$$
Q=\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
A & B \\
\hline-B^{*} X & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

where $X$ is a non-negative definite solution of the Riccati equation (146). We denote by $P$ the set of non-negative definite solutions of this Riccati equation. $P$ has a natural partial order induced by the standard order on Hermitian matrices.

We want to remark that, for a minimal spectral factor $W$ that satisfies (145), the factorization $Q_{+}=Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}$ represents a parametrization of the set of stable and antistable zeros of $W$. In fact $Q^{\prime \prime}$ determines the set of stable zeros of $W$ that can still be moved to the right half plane, via multiplication by $Q^{\prime \prime}$, whereas $Q^{\prime}$ determines the set of antistable zeros of $W$, that is zeros of $W_{-}$that have been moved already to the right half plane, via multiplication by $Q^{\prime}$. This issue will be addressed formally in a subsequent paper. For a full parametrization of the set of all minimal spectral factors, see Fuhrmann (1955).

There is a third order that can be considered and it is a geometric one. It is a variation on an order introduced by Lindquist and Picci (1991). For each $W \in w^{p}$ there is a unique right coprime DSS factorization $W=\bar{W} K$ with $K$ normalized inner and $\bar{W} \in H_{-}^{\infty}$. If $W Q^{\prime \prime}=W_{+}$we associate with the spectral factor $W$ the state space $X_{W}=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}$. We denote by $x^{p}$ the set of these spaces. We say $X_{W_{1}} \leq X_{W_{2}}$ if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|f P_{X_{W_{1}}}\right\| \leq\left\|f P_{X_{W_{2}}}\right\|, \quad \forall \in X_{W_{+}} \tag{147}
\end{equation*}
$$

Of course we have $X_{W_{+}}=H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)$．
In the next theorem we show that all these partial orders are equivalent．
Theorem 8：Let $\Phi$ be a full rank，normalized，coercive spectral density．Let $w^{p}$ be the set of all minimal，stable internal spectral factors of $\Phi$ ，let $x^{p}$ be the set of all state spaces corresponding to these factors．Let the inner function $Q_{+}$be defined as before and assume it has a minimal realization

$$
Q_{+}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
A & B \\
\hline-B^{*} X_{+} & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

with $X_{+}$the positive definite solution of the Riccati equation

$$
A^{*} X+X A+X B B^{*} X=0
$$

Let $P$ be the set of all non－negative definite solutions of this Riccati equation．Let $W_{\alpha}$ $W_{\beta} \in \mathcal{W}^{p}$ ．

Then the following conditions are equivlent．

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{1}(s) W_{1}(s)^{*} \leq W_{2}(s) W_{2}(s)^{*}, \quad \operatorname{Re} s>0 \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

（2）For some inner function $Q$ ，we have $W_{2}=W_{1} Q$ ．
（3）For some inner function $Q$ ，we have $Q Q z=Q r$ ．
（4）

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{\rightsquigarrow}(s)^{*} Q_{饣}(s) \leq Q_{z}(s)^{*} Q_{z}(s), \quad \operatorname{Re} s>0 \tag{149}
\end{equation*}
$$

（5）With $H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q \uparrow, H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right) Q$ 亿 the state spaces associated with $W_{1}, W_{2}$ respect－ ively，we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q_{r}}\right\| \leq\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right) Q_{2}}\right\|, \quad \forall f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right) \tag{150}
\end{equation*}
$$

（6）We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\uparrow}\right)}\right\| \geq \| g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{弓}\right)}\right) \|, \quad \forall g \in H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \tag{151}
\end{equation*}
$$

（7）$Q \uparrow, Q_{2}$ have unique representations of the form

$$
Q_{i}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
A & B \\
\hline-B^{*} X_{i} & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

with $X_{i}$ non－negative definite solutions of the Riccati equation satisfying $X_{1} \geq X_{2}$ ．

Proof：We prove the following implications：
$(1) \Leftrightarrow(2)$
Assume statement（1）holds．This implies $\left\|\xi W_{1}(s)\right\| \geq\left\|\xi W_{2}(s)\right\|$ ，in $\operatorname{Re} s>0$ ，and hence $Q(s)=W_{1}(s)^{-1} W_{2}(s)$ has at most a finite number of removable singularities in the right half plane．Thus $Q(s)$ is analytic and contractive in the right half plane． Moreover，as the $W_{i}$ are spectral factors，we have $W_{1}(s) W_{1}(s)^{*}=W_{2}(s) W_{2}(s)^{*}$ on
the boundary, i.e. $Q(s)$ is unitary on the imaginary axis, which means it is inner. So (2) holds.

Conversely, $W_{2}=W_{1} Q$ implies that, for every $s$ in the open right half plane,

$$
W_{2}(s) W_{2}(s)^{*}=W_{1}(s) Q(s) Q(s)^{*} W_{1}(s)^{*} \leq W_{1}(s) W_{1}(s)^{*}
$$

as $Q(s)$, being inner, is contractive in the open right half plane.
$(3) \Leftrightarrow(5)$
Assume $Q Q \mathbb{q}=Q \uparrow$ holds. We clearly have $H_{r}(Q r)=H_{r}(Q Q \notin)=$ $H_{r}(Q) Q z \oplus H_{r}\left(Q \not z^{\prime}\right)$ and this implies that for every $f \in H\left(K_{+}\right)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{r}\right)}\right\| \geq\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\xi}\right)}\right\| \tag{152}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that we have $K_{i} Q_{i}=\bar{Q}_{i}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}$and hence
$H_{r}\left(K_{i}\right) Q_{i}^{\prime \prime} \subset H_{r}\left(K_{i}\right) Q_{i}^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(K_{i} Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{\imath}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}\right)=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{i}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+} \oplus H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)$
This implies the equality

$$
\|f\|^{2}=\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{i}\right) Q_{i}}\right\|^{2}+\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{i}\right)}\right\|^{2}
$$

for all $f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)$. As a consequence of (152), we conclude that statement (2) implies $\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q_{r}}\right\| \leq\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right) Q_{2}}\right\|$.
(2) $\Leftrightarrow(3)$

We have $W_{1} Q_{r}=W_{+}=W_{2} Q^{\ell}$. Since $W_{2}=W_{1} Q_{1}$, it follows that $W_{1} Q_{r}=$ $W_{1} Q Q \not \varepsilon^{\prime}$, and, by the invertibility of $W_{1}$, that $Q \mathbb{r}=Q Q \not \xi^{\prime}$.

Conversely, assume $Q Q \not \xi^{\prime}=Q \uparrow$. We compute

$$
W_{2} Q \sharp=W_{+}=W_{1} Q r=W_{1} Q Q \sharp
$$

which clearly implies the equality $W_{2}=W_{1} Q$.
(3) $\Leftrightarrow(4)$

Inequality (149) follows from $Q Q z=Q r$ by the contractivity of $Q$ in the open right half plane.

Conversely, inequality (149) shows that, with the exception of a finite number of points, the function $Q=Q_{\mathbb{r}}\left(Q^{\nless}\right)^{-1}$ is analytic and contractive in the open right half plane. Thus the singularities are removable. As $Q$ has unitary boundary values, it is necessarily inner.
$(2) \Leftrightarrow(6)$
 have therefore the inclusions $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) \subset H_{r}(Q \boldsymbol{q}) \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)$. This implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{p}\right)}\right\| \geq\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\xi}\right)}\right\|, \quad \forall g \in H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \tag{153}
\end{equation*}
$$

To prove the converse, note that $H_{r}\left(Q_{i}^{\prime}\right) \subset\left\{H_{+}^{2} Q_{+}\right\}^{\perp}$. Here it follows that the inequality $\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\uparrow}\right)}\right\| \geq\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\xi}\right)}\right\|$ holds for all $g \in H_{+}^{2}$. We conclude that $H_{r}\left(Q^{\xi}\right) \subset H_{r}(Q \mathbb{q})$ and therefore $Q \Re=Q Q \nLeftarrow$ for some inner function $Q$.
(3) $\Leftrightarrow(7)$

This has been proved in Fuhrmann (1995).
(5) $\Leftrightarrow(6)$

Assume $\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q_{\uparrow}}\right\| \leq\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right) Q_{2}}\right\|$ for all $f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)$. By a previous computa-
tion, this is equivalent to $\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\uparrow}\right)}\right\| \geq\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{z}\right)}\right\|$ for $f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)$. Now, if $M \subset N$ are subspaces of a Hilbert space and $P_{M}, P_{N}$ the respective orthogonal projections, then we have $P_{M}=P_{M} P_{N}$. We apply this in the following way. We clearly have $Q_{i} Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}=Q_{+}$and therefore $H_{r}\left(Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}\right) \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)$. So $P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}\right)}=P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{i}\right)} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)}$. Now, we claim that

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \tag{154}
\end{equation*}
$$

To see this we consider the inverse of the phase function $T_{0}^{-1}=W_{-}^{-1} \bar{W}_{+}=Q_{+} K_{+}^{*}$. The first factorization is a left Wiener-Hopf factorization with trivial factorization indices. Hence the Toeplitz operator $T_{W_{-}^{-1} \bar{W}_{+}}^{r}=T_{Q_{+} K_{+}^{*}}^{r}$ is invertible. Applying Theorem 1, we conclude that (154) holds. Now (152) implies

$$
\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{r}\right)}\right\| \geq\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\xi}\right)}\right\|
$$

and hence that

$$
\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\uparrow}\right)}\right\| \geq\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\xi}\right)}\right\|
$$

for all $g \in H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)$.
(6) $\Leftrightarrow(3)$

From (6), using the factorizations $Q_{+}=Q_{i}^{\prime} Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}$, we conclude that

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}\left(Q_{\uparrow}\right) Q_{\uparrow} & =H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \cap H_{+}^{2} Q_{饣}=\operatorname{Ker} H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{饣}\right)} \\
& \subset \operatorname{Ker} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\uparrow}\right)} \mid H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \cap H_{+}^{2} Q_{\uparrow} \\
& =H_{r}\left(Q_{\imath}\right) Q_{\imath}
\end{aligned}
$$

This implies that $Q \mathbb{r}=Q Q \varepsilon$ for some inner function $Q$, and hence also $Q_{\ell}=Q 1 Q$.
So $W_{2}=W_{-} Q_{1}=W_{-} Q 1 Q=W_{1} Q$, i.e. $W_{1} \leq W_{2}$.
We pass now to the study of the set $w^{m}$ of minimal, stable, $p \times m$ spectral factors in the general case ( $m_{0} \leq m \leq m_{0}+p$ ), which is the central theme of this paper. We denote by $\mathcal{w}^{m_{0}}$ the set of all minimal, stable $p \times m_{0}$ internal spectral factors of $\Phi$. We also denote by $\bar{w}^{m}$ the set of all minimal, antistable $p \times m$ spectral of $\Phi$. Again $w^{m}$ can be partially ordered. Unhappily, defining $W_{1} \leq W_{2}$ if $W_{2}=W_{1} Q$ for some inner function $Q$ is too coarse an order, and it can be refined. Thus we proceed differently, defining a partial order in the sets $w^{m}, \bar{w}^{m}, x^{m}$ and $\bar{x}^{m}$.
Definition 7: Let $W_{1}, W_{2}$ be minimal, stable, $p \times m$ spectral factors and let $X_{i}=H_{r}\left(K_{i}\right) Q_{i \prime \prime}^{\prime \prime} \in x_{-}^{m}, i=1,2$ be the respective minimal Markovian splitting subspaces. Let $W_{i}=\bar{W}_{i} K_{i}$ be the right coprime DSS factorizations over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Let $\bar{Q}_{i}$ be defined via figure 4.
(1) We say that $W_{\alpha} \leq W_{\beta}$ if

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{\alpha}(s) W_{\alpha}(s)^{*} \geq W_{\beta}(s) W_{\beta}(s)^{*}, \quad \operatorname{Re} s>0 \tag{155}
\end{equation*}
$$

(2) If $\bar{W}_{\alpha}, \bar{W}_{\beta} \in \bar{w}^{m}$, we say that $\bar{W}_{\alpha} \leq \bar{W}_{\beta}$ if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{W}_{\alpha}(s) \bar{W}_{\alpha}(s)^{*} \geq \bar{W}_{\beta}(s) \bar{W}_{\beta}(s)^{*}, \quad \operatorname{Re} s>0 \tag{156}
\end{equation*}
$$

(3) We say that $X_{1} \leq X_{2}$ if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|f P_{X_{1}}\right\| \leq\left\|f P_{X_{2}}\right\|, \quad \forall f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \tag{157}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $P_{X}$ denotes the orthogonal projection of $H_{+}^{2}$ onto $X$.
(4) Given two minimal Markovian splitting subspaces

$$
\bar{X}_{i}=\bar{H}_{r}\left(K_{i}^{*}\right)\left(K_{i}^{*}\right)\left(\bar{Q}_{i}\right)^{*} \in \bar{\chi}^{-},
$$

we say that $\bar{X}_{1} \leq \bar{X}_{2}$ if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|h P_{\bar{X}_{1}}\right\| \geq\left\|h P_{\bar{X}_{2}}\right\|, \quad \forall h \in \bar{H}_{r}\left[\left(K_{-}^{e}\right)^{*}\right] \tag{158}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $P_{\bar{X}}$ denotes the orthogonal projection of $H_{-}^{2}$ onto $\bar{X}$.
The definition of the partial order in the set $\mathcal{W}$ is customary, see Anderson (1973). We point out the inversion of the direction of the inequality, compared with (157). Also, we note that, since multiplication by inner functions is a unitary map in $L^{2}$ and therefore preserves orthogonality, (158) is equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q_{\mu}}\right\| \geq\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right) Q_{2}}\right\|, \quad \forall f \in H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime} \tag{159}
\end{equation*}
$$

We recall that, assuming $W_{-}$is $p \times m_{0}$ and of full column rank, the inner functions $Q_{-}, Q_{+}, K_{-}, K_{+}$are all $m_{0} \times m_{0}$, whereas the spectral factors we study are all of size $p \times m$. We also recall that we have defined $\pi_{4}$, see Definition 3, to be the projection on the first $m_{0}$ components. For following the statement and proof of the next theorem, it is advisable to refer to figure 4.
Theorem 9: Let $\Phi$ be a rank mo, spectral function, having no zeros on the extended imaginary axis. Let $\mathcal{W}^{m}$ be the set of all minimal, stable spectral factors of $\Phi$, let $x^{m}$ be the set of all minimal Markovian splitting subspaces corresponding to these factors. Let $W_{\alpha}, W_{\beta} \in \mathcal{W}^{m}$. Then the following statements are equivalent.
(1)

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{\alpha} \leq W_{\beta} \tag{160}
\end{equation*}
$$

(2)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{W}_{\alpha} \leq \bar{W}_{\beta} \tag{161}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi_{1} Q_{\alpha}(s)^{-1} Q_{\alpha}(s)^{-*} \pi_{1} \geq \pi_{1} Q \underset{\beta}{ }(s)^{-1} Q_{\beta}(s)^{-*} \pi^{\prime}, \quad \operatorname{Re} s>0 \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi_{1} Q_{\alpha}(s)^{*} Q_{\mu}(s) \pi_{1} \leq \pi_{1} Q_{\beta}(s)^{*} Q_{ß}(s) \pi_{1}, \quad \operatorname{Re} s>0 \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

(5) We have
(6) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\tilde{\alpha}}\right)}\right\| \geq\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)}\right\|, \quad \forall g \in H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \tag{165}
\end{equation*}
$$

(7) With the maps $T_{i}$ defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{i}=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\imath}\right)}, \quad i=\alpha, \beta \tag{166}
\end{equation*}
$$

there exists a unique, contractive map $Y$ for which $T_{\alpha} Y=T_{\beta}$.
(8) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{\alpha}\right) Q_{\ddot{\alpha}}}\right\| \leq\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{\beta}\right) Q_{\beta}^{\prime}}\right\|, \quad \forall f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \tag{167}
\end{equation*}
$$

(9) Let the maps $R_{1}: H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \rightarrow H_{r}\left(K_{i}\right) Q_{i}$ be defined by (133) for $i=\alpha, \beta$. The map

$$
Z: H_{r}\left(K_{\beta}\right) Q_{ß}^{\beta} \rightarrow H_{r}\left(K_{\alpha}\right) Q_{\alpha}^{\prime}
$$

defined by $Z=R_{\beta}^{-1} R_{\alpha}$ is contractive.

## Proof:

$(1) \Leftrightarrow(2)$
Since $W_{i}=\bar{W}_{i} K_{i}$, we have

$$
W_{i} W_{i}^{*}=\bar{W}_{i} K_{i} K_{i}^{*} \bar{W}_{i}^{*}=\bar{W}_{i} \bar{W}_{i}^{*}
$$

which clearly implies the equivalence.
$(1) \Leftrightarrow(3)$
We note that, on the imaginary axis, we have $W_{\alpha}=W_{+}^{e}\left(Q_{\alpha}\right)^{*}$, which clearly has a meromorphic extension to the right half plane, given by $W_{\alpha}(s)=W_{+}^{e}(s) Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}(s)^{-1}$. Assume $W_{\alpha} \leq W_{\beta}$, i.e. inequality (155) holds. Let $W_{+}^{L}(s)$ be a left inverse of $W_{+}(s)$. We clearly have the following implications.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& W_{\alpha}(s) W_{\alpha}(s)^{*} \geq W_{\beta}(s) W_{\beta}(s)^{*} \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& W_{+}^{-}{ }^{L}(s) W_{\alpha}(s) W_{\alpha}(s)^{*} W_{+}^{-}{ }^{L}(s)^{*} \geq W_{+}^{-}{ }^{L}(s) W_{\beta}(s) W_{\beta}(s)^{*} W_{+}^{-L}(s)^{*} \\
& \Leftrightarrow
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \geq W_{+}^{L}(s)\left(W_{+}(s) \quad 0\right) Q_{ß}(s)^{-1} Q_{\beta}(s)^{-*}\binom{W_{+}(s)^{*}}{0} W_{+}^{L}(s)^{*} \\
& \begin{array}{c}
\Leftrightarrow \\
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0
\end{array}\right) Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}(s)^{-1} Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}(s)^{-*}\binom{I}{0}
\end{array} \\
& \Leftrightarrow \\
& \pi_{1} Q_{\alpha}(s)^{-1} Q_{\mu}(s)^{-*} \pi_{1} \geq \pi_{1} Q_{\beta}(s)^{-1} Q_{\beta}(s)^{-*} \tau_{1}
\end{aligned}
$$

Our only remaining task is to invert the first implication. To this end we show that $W_{+}(s) W_{+}(s)^{-L} W_{\alpha}(s)=W_{\alpha}(s)$. Indeed, by Lemma 6, we have $W_{+}(s) W_{+}(s)^{-L} W_{-}(s)=W_{-}(s)$. Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
W_{+}(s) W_{+}(s)^{-L} W_{\alpha}(s) & =W_{+}(s) W_{+}(s)^{-L} W_{-}^{e}(s) Q_{\alpha}^{e}(s) \\
& =W_{-}^{e}(s) Q_{\alpha}^{\prime}(s)=W_{\alpha}(s)
\end{aligned}
$$

Extending ( $\left.\begin{array}{l} \\ 0\end{array}\right)$ in a natural way to a projection proves the reverse implication.
$(6) \Leftrightarrow(4)$
By our assumption, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\ddot{\prime}}\right)}\right\| \geq\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\tilde{\prime}}\right)}\right\|, \quad \forall g \in H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \tag{168}
\end{equation*}
$$

We show now this inequality holds for all $g \in H_{+}^{2} \pi_{4}$. Clearly, for all $f \in H_{+}^{2}$, we have $f=f \pi_{1}+f \tau_{6}$. In particular, since by equation (89) $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1} \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)$, we have

$$
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1}+H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \tau_{\underline{E}} \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)+H_{+}^{2} \pi_{2}
$$

So $g P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)}=g P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)}\left(P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)}+P_{H_{+}^{2} \pi_{-}}\right)$. Assume $g \in H_{+}^{2} \pi_{4}$, i.e. $g=f \pi$, then it follows that, for all $f \in H_{+}^{2}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
f \pi_{1} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\mu}\right)} & =f \pi_{1}\left(P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)}+P_{H_{+}^{2} \pi_{-}}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)} \\
& =f \pi_{1} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)} P_{H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

This implies

$$
\left\|f \pi_{1} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{Q}\right)}\right\|=\left\|f \pi_{1} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{Q}\right)}\right\| \geq\left\|f \pi_{1} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)}\right\|=\left\|f \pi_{1} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\beta}\right)}\right\|
$$

Thus we have obtained

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|f \pi_{1} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\mu}\right)}\right\| \geq\left\|f \pi_{1} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)}\right\| \quad \forall f \in H_{+}^{2} \tag{169}
\end{equation*}
$$

We take now special choices for $f$, namely

$$
f=\frac{\xi}{s+\bar{\omega}}, \quad \xi \in \operatorname{Im} \pi, \quad \operatorname{Re} \omega>0
$$

Note that for any $H_{+}^{2}$ function $h$, we have $\langle h, \xi /(s+\bar{\omega})\rangle_{H_{+}^{2}}=h(\omega) \xi^{*}$. It is easy to check that

$$
\frac{\xi}{s+\bar{\omega}}=\frac{\xi-\xi Q(\omega)^{*} Q(s)}{s+\bar{\omega}}+\frac{\xi Q(\omega)^{*} Q(s)}{s+\bar{\omega}}
$$

is an orthogonal decomposition relative to $H_{+}^{2}=H_{r}(Q) \oplus H_{+}^{2} Q$. In fact,

$$
\mathcal{K}(s, \omega):=\frac{I-Q(\omega)^{*} Q(s)}{s+\bar{\omega}}
$$

is the reproducing kernel for $H_{r}(Q)$. Inequality (169) translates therefore into

$$
\frac{\|\xi\|^{2}-\varepsilon_{\alpha}^{\prime}(\omega)^{*} Q_{\alpha}^{\mu}(\omega) \xi^{*}}{\omega+\bar{\omega}} \geq \frac{\|\xi\|^{2}-Q_{ß}^{«}(\omega)^{*} Q_{\beta}(\omega) \xi^{*}}{\omega+\bar{\omega}},
$$

or, since $\omega+\bar{\omega}>0$

$$
\xi_{ß}(\omega)^{*} Q_{ß}(\omega) \xi^{*} \geq \xi_{\alpha}(\omega)^{*} Q_{\alpha}^{\prime}(\omega) \xi^{*}
$$

This is equivalent to

$$
\pi_{\mu} Q_{\beta}^{\mu}(\omega)^{*} Q_{\beta}(\omega) \pi_{1} \geq \pi_{1} Q_{\alpha}^{\mu}(\omega)^{*} Q_{\alpha}(\omega) \pi_{1}
$$

Conversely, assume (163) holds. Computing backwards, it is easy to see that this entails

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi_{1} \mathcal{K}_{\alpha}(\omega, \omega) \pi_{1} \geq \pi_{1} \mathcal{K}_{\beta}(\omega, \omega) \pi_{1} \tag{170}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\varkappa_{i}(s, \omega):=\frac{I-Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}(\omega)^{*} Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}(s)}{s+\bar{\omega}}, \quad \text { for } i=\alpha, \beta
$$

We assume first that

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(Q_{\alpha}\right) \pi_{1}=H_{r}\left(Q_{ß}^{\sharp}\right) \pi_{1} \tag{171}
\end{equation*}
$$

and denote the common dimension of these spaces by $r$. Then we can chose in these spaces basis matrices $F_{\alpha}$ and $F_{\beta}$, which we consider as a column of $r$ rows of $H_{+}^{2}$, such that $F_{\alpha} \pi_{1}=F_{\beta} \pi_{1}=F_{+}$. This can be achieved by taking any basis $F_{\alpha}$ in $H_{r}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}\right)$ and constructing $F_{\beta}$ as $\left(F_{\alpha} \pi_{1}\right)\left(H_{r}\left(Q_{\beta}^{\beta}\right) \mid \tau_{斤}\right)^{-1}$, noting that, by Proposition 15, the map $H_{r}\left(Q_{\beta}\right) \mid \pi_{1}$ is injective. Then it is well known, see Dym (1989), that

$$
\varkappa_{i}(s, \omega)=F_{i}(\omega)^{*} P_{i}^{-1} F_{i}(s), \quad i=\alpha, \beta
$$

where $P_{i}$ is the Gram matrix of the basis $F_{i}$ defined, for $i=\alpha$, as $\left(P_{\alpha}\right)_{j \cdot k}=\left\langle F_{j, \alpha}, F_{k, \alpha}\right\rangle$ where $j, k=1, \ldots, r$ and $F_{j, \alpha}$ is the $j$ th row of the matrix $F_{\alpha}$. Therefore the relation (170) can be written as

$$
\pi_{1} F_{\alpha}(\omega)^{*} P_{\alpha}^{-1} F_{\alpha}(\omega) \pi_{1} \geq \pi_{1} F_{\beta}(\omega)^{*} P_{\beta}^{-1} F_{\beta}(\omega) \pi_{1}
$$

which, in view of our choice of the basis, becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{+}(\omega)^{*} P_{\alpha}^{-1} F_{+}(\omega) \geq F_{+}(\omega)^{*} P_{\beta}^{-1} F_{+}(\omega) \tag{172}
\end{equation*}
$$

We claim that (172) entails

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{\alpha}^{-1} \geq P_{\beta}^{-1} \tag{173}
\end{equation*}
$$

To see this, we need to show that

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(\omega)^{*} P F(\omega) \geq 0 \quad \omega \in \rrbracket \tag{174}
\end{equation*}
$$

implies $P \geq 0$. Assume $\hat{u}(\omega)$ is a row vector in $H_{+}^{2}$ of suitable dimension. Then denoting by $\mathcal{F}$ the Fourier transform, it is well known that

$$
\left.\mathcal{F}^{-1}[F(\omega) \hat{u}(\omega)] t\right)=\int_{-\infty} \mathrm{e}^{A(t-s)} B u(s) \mathrm{d} s=x(t)
$$

where $u$ is the inverse transform of $\hat{u}$ and $(A, B)$ denotes a controllable pair such that $F(\omega)=(\omega I-A)^{-1} B$. Similarly,

$$
\left.\mathcal{F}^{-1}\left[\hat{u}(\omega)^{*} F(\omega)^{*} P G_{+}(\omega) \hat{u}(\omega)\right] t\right)=\int_{-\infty} x(s-t)^{*} P x(s) \mathrm{d} s
$$

which evaluated at zero yields, taking into consideration inequality (174),

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \leq \int_{-\infty}^{0} x(s)^{*} P x(s) \mathrm{d} s \tag{175}
\end{equation*}
$$

Suppose now $\xi^{*} P \xi<0$ for some $\xi \in \mathbb{C}^{m}$. Then, since $\xi^{*} \mathrm{e}^{A^{*} s} P \mathrm{e}^{A s} \xi$ is continuous in $s$, there exists a $\tau<0$ such that the integral $\int_{\tau}^{0} \xi^{*} \mathrm{e}^{A^{*} s} P \mathrm{e}^{A s} \xi \mathrm{~d} s$ is strictly negative. On the other hand, in view of controllability, we can find a control $u_{0}$ s.t.
 that $\int_{-\infty}^{\top} x^{*}(s) P x(s) \mathrm{d} s$ is arbitrarily small, in particular smaller than $-\int_{\tau}^{0} \xi^{*} \mathrm{e}^{A^{*} s} P \mathrm{e}^{A s} \xi \mathrm{~d} s$. Furthermore, we set $u_{0}(s)=0$ for $\tau \leq s \leq 0$. Therefore we have constructed a control such that $\int_{-\infty}^{0} x^{*}(s) P x(s) \mathrm{d} s<0$. As this contradicts (175), we can conclude that $P \geq 0$.

If we go now back to (172), we immediately see that the above argument yields (173). To conclude, let now $g \in H_{+}^{2} \pi_{1}$. Then, by a well-known property of reproducing kernels, see Dym (1989),

$$
g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{i}\right)}=\langle g(\omega), \mathcal{}(\cdot, \omega)\rangle=\left\langle g, F_{i}\right\rangle P_{i}^{-1} F_{i}
$$

and

$$
\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{i}\right)}\right\|^{2}=\left\langle g, F_{i}\right\rangle P_{I}^{-1}\left\langle F_{i}, g\right\rangle
$$

Since $\left\langle g, F_{\alpha}\right\rangle=\left\langle g, F_{\beta}\right\rangle$ we see that $P_{\alpha}^{-1} \geq P_{\beta}^{-1}$ implies $\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{थ}\right)}\right\|^{2} \geq\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\beta}\right)}\right\|^{2}$. This shows the implication under the restrictive assumption (171).

If the assumption (171) is not satisfied, then, necessarily, we must have $H_{r}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\mu}\right) \pi_{\mathrm{q}} \supset H_{r}\left(Q_{\beta}\right) \pi_{\mathrm{q}}$. Indeed, inequality (162) implies that

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{ß}^{\beta}\left(-\bar{s}_{j}\right) \pi_{i} \xi_{j}^{*}=0 \Rightarrow Q_{\alpha}^{\mu}\left(-\bar{s}_{j}\right) \pi_{i} \xi_{j}^{*}=0 \tag{176}
\end{equation*}
$$

and, more generally, if the superscript indicates the $k$ th derivative,

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{\beta}^{(k)}\left(-\bar{s}_{j}\right) \pi_{1} \xi_{j}^{*}=0 \Rightarrow Q_{\alpha}^{(k)}\left(-\bar{s}_{j}\right) \pi_{i} \xi_{j}^{*}=0 \tag{177}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, we conclude that if

$$
\frac{\xi}{\left(s-s_{j}\right)^{k+1}} \pi_{1} \in H_{r}\left(Q_{ß}\right) \pi_{\mathrm{r}}
$$

then

$$
\frac{\xi}{\left(s-s_{j}\right)^{k+1}} \pi_{1} \in H_{r}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1}
$$

which is our claim. Thus we can decompose $H_{r}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1}$ as

$$
H_{r}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime}\right) \pi_{1}=H_{r}\left(Q_{\beta}^{\prime}\right) \pi_{1} \oplus\left[H_{r}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1} \ominus H_{r}\left(Q_{\nless}\right) \pi_{1}\right]
$$

This means that if $\hat{F}_{\beta}$ is a basis in $H_{r}\left(Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right) \tau_{\mathrm{q}}$, we can find a basis $\hat{F}_{\alpha}$ of $H_{r}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\mu}\right) \pi_{1}$ of the form

$$
\hat{F}_{\alpha}=\binom{\hat{F}_{\beta}}{x}
$$

Let now $F_{i}$ be the inverse image in $H_{r}\left(Q_{*^{\prime \prime}}\right)$ under $\pi_{1}$ of $\hat{F}_{i}$, for $i=\alpha, \beta$. Construct the reproducing kernels $\mathscr{K}_{i}(s, \omega)-F_{i}(\omega)^{*} P_{i}^{-1} F_{i}(s)$. Then

$$
\pi_{1} \mathcal{K}_{\alpha} \pi_{1}=\hat{F}_{\alpha}(\omega)^{*} P_{\alpha}^{-1} \hat{F}_{\alpha}(s)
$$

and

$$
\pi_{1} \varkappa_{\beta} \pi_{1}=\hat{F}_{\beta}(\omega)^{*} P_{\beta}^{-1} \hat{F}_{\beta}(s)=\hat{F}_{\alpha}(\omega)^{*}\left(\begin{array}{rr}
P_{\beta}^{-1} & 0 \\
0 & 0
\end{array}\right) \hat{F}_{\alpha}(s)
$$

so that, again in view of the ordering on the matrices following from (172) we obtain

$$
P_{\alpha}^{-1} \geq\left(\begin{array}{rr}
P_{\beta}^{-1} & 0 \\
0 & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

The conclusion of the backward implication then follows as above and the equivalence is thus proved.
(3) $\Leftrightarrow(5)$

Assume first that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi_{1} \bar{H}_{c}\left(\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*}\right)=\pi_{1} \bar{H}_{c}\left[\left(Q_{ß}\right)^{*}\right] \tag{178}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is a coinvariant subspace of $\bar{H}_{c}\left(Q^{*}\right)$, hence of the form $\bar{H}_{c}\left(Q^{*}\right)$ for some left factor $Q^{*}$ of $Q_{+}^{*}$. The common dimension of these subspaces will be denoted by $r$. Let $\bar{F}$ be a basis matrix of $\bar{H}_{c}\left(Q^{*}\right)$. Since, by Proposition 15, the projections
 and $\left.H_{c}\left[Q_{\beta}\right)^{*}\right]$ respectively such that $\bar{F}=\pi_{1} \bar{F}_{\alpha}=\pi_{1} \bar{F}_{\beta-}$ Let $P_{\alpha}, P_{\beta_{-}}$be the Gram matrices of these bases. Thus the projection of $g \in \bar{H}_{c}\left(Q_{+}^{*}\right)$ on $\left.\bar{H}_{c}\left[Q_{i}^{*}\right)^{*}\right]$ for $i=\alpha, \beta$, can be written as

$$
P_{\bar{H}_{c}\left(Q_{i}^{-1}\right)} g=\bar{F}_{i} P_{i}^{-1}\left\langle\bar{F}_{i}, g\right\rangle \quad i=\alpha, \beta
$$

and hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|P_{\bar{H}_{c}\left(Q_{i}^{-1}\right)} g\right\|^{2}=\left\langle g, \bar{F}_{i}\right\rangle P_{i}^{-1}\langle\bar{F}, g\rangle \quad i=\alpha, \beta \tag{179}
\end{equation*}
$$

In view of our choice of $\bar{F}_{i}$, it is, for all $g \in \pi_{1} H_{-}^{2}$ and thus a fortiori for all $g \in H_{c}\left(Q_{+}^{-1}\right)$

$$
\left\langle g, \bar{F}_{\alpha}\right\rangle=\left\langle g, \bar{F}_{\beta}\right\rangle=\left\langle g, \bar{F}_{+}\right\rangle
$$

Therefore, we can write:

$$
\left\|P_{\bar{H}_{c}\left(Q_{i}^{-1}\right)}\right\|^{2}=\left\langle g, \bar{F}_{+} Y_{i}^{-1}\left\langle\bar{F}_{+}, g\right\rangle \quad i=\alpha, \beta\right.
$$

Since $\bar{F}$ is a basis matrix, we have $\left\{\left\langle g, \bar{F}_{i}\right\rangle g \in H_{c}\left(Q^{*}\right)\right\}=\mathbf{C}^{r}$. Therefore, we can conclude that

$$
\left\|P_{\bar{H}_{c}\left(\left(Q_{\ddot{*}}\right)^{*}\right) g}\right\| \geq\left\|P_{\bar{H}_{c}\left(\left(Q_{\overparen{\beta}}\right)^{*}\right) g}\right\| \quad \forall g \in \bar{H}_{c}\left(Q_{+}^{*}\right)
$$

if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{\alpha}^{-1} \geq P_{\beta}^{-1} \tag{180}
\end{equation*}
$$

We have shown that (164) is equivalent to (180). We show now that (180) is equivalent to (162). First, we show that if $Q$ is inner in the right half plane and $\bar{F}$ is a basis matrix for $H_{c}\left(Q^{*}\right)$ with Gram matrix $P$, then we have, for $\operatorname{Re} s>0$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{Q^{-1}(s) Q^{-1}(s)^{*}-I}{s+\bar{s}}=\bar{F}(s) P^{-1} \bar{F}(s)^{*} \tag{181}
\end{equation*}
$$

In fact, by a standard result [see Dym (1989)] the reproducing kernel of a coinvariant subspace $H_{c}(Q)$ can be written as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{I-Q(s) Q(\omega)^{*}}{s+\bar{\omega}}=F(s) P^{-1} F(\omega)^{*} \tag{182}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $F$ is any basis matrix of $H_{c}(Q)$ and $P$ its Gram matrix.

Let now $\bar{F}=Q^{-1} F$ be a left coprime Douglas-Shapiro-Shields factorization of $\bar{F}$. Then $\bar{F}$ is a basis matrix of $\bar{H}_{c}\left(Q^{*}\right)$ if and only if $F$ is a basis matrix of $H_{c}(Q)$. Therefore multiplying (182) on the left by $Q^{-1}(s)$, on the right by $Q^{-1}(\omega)^{*}$ and taking $\omega=s$ we get (181). We can now write the following chain of equivalences in $\operatorname{Re} s>0$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\pi_{1} Q_{\alpha}^{-1}(s) Q_{\alpha}^{-1}(s)^{*} \pi_{1} & \geq \pi_{1} Q_{\beta}^{-1}(s) Q_{\beta}^{-1}(s)^{*} \pi_{\mathrm{I}} \\
& \Leftrightarrow \\
\pi_{1} \frac{Q_{\alpha}^{-1}(s) Q_{\alpha}^{-1}(s)^{*}-I}{s+\bar{S}} \pi_{1} & \geq \pi_{\mathrm{I}} \frac{Q_{\beta}^{-1}(s) Q_{\beta}^{-1}(s)^{*}-I}{s+\bar{s}} \pi_{\mathrm{L}} \\
& \Leftrightarrow \\
\pi_{1} \bar{F}_{\alpha}(s) P_{\alpha}^{-1} \bar{F}_{\alpha}(s)^{*} \pi_{\mathrm{I}} & \geq \pi_{1} \bar{F}_{\beta}(s) P_{\beta}^{-1} \bar{F}_{\beta}(s)^{*} \pi_{1} \\
& \Leftrightarrow \\
\bar{F}_{+}(s) P_{\alpha}^{-1} \bar{F}_{+}(s)^{*} & \geq \bar{F}_{+}(s) P_{\beta}^{-1} \bar{F}_{+}(s)^{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

The last line is clearly implied by $P_{\alpha}^{-1} \geq P_{\beta}^{-1}$. The opposite implication is seen as above. If the assumption (178) is not satisfied, we proceed as in the proof of the previous equivalence.
(6) $\Leftrightarrow(5)$

Follows from the fact that the map $J: H_{+}^{2} \rightarrow H_{-}^{2}$ defined by

$$
(g J)(s):=g(-\bar{s})^{*}
$$

where $H_{+}^{2}$ and $H_{-}^{2}$ are row and column spaces respectively, is a unitary map and hence preserves ortogonality. In particular, given any inner function $Q$, we have $H_{+}^{2}=H_{r}(Q) \oplus H_{+}^{2} Q$ which, since $(g Q) J=Q^{*}(g J)$, implies the direct sum decomposition $H_{-}^{2}=H_{c}\left(Q^{*}\right) \oplus Q^{*} H_{-}^{2}$. Moreover, we have for $g \in H_{+}^{2}$,

$$
\left(g P_{H_{r}(Q)}\right) J=P_{\bar{H}_{c}\left(Q^{*}\right)}(g J)
$$

Finally, we note that $H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) J=\bar{H}_{c}\left(Q_{+}^{*}\right)$, and this completes the proof of the claimed equivalence.
(8) $\Leftrightarrow(6)$

We assume (167) holds. Since

$$
H_{r}\left(K_{i}\right) Q_{i}^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q_{i}\right)=H_{r}\left(K_{i} Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{i} K_{+}^{e}\right)=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}_{i}{ }^{\prime}\right) K_{i}^{e} \oplus H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)
$$

we have

$$
\|f\|^{2}=\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{i}\right) Q_{\imath}}\right\|^{2}+\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\imath}\right)}\right\|^{2} \quad \forall \in \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)
$$

Thus (167) holds if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\alpha}\right)}\right\| \geq f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\beta}\right)} \| \quad \forall f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \tag{183}
\end{equation*}
$$

We claim that the last inequality implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\varkappa}\right)}\right\| \geq\left\|g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\beta}\right)}\right\| \quad \forall g \in H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \tag{184}
\end{equation*}
$$

To see this, note that the factorization

$$
Q_{i} Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

implies the inclusion

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{r}\left(Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}\right) \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \oplus H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \tag{185}
\end{equation*}
$$

We also note that $H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \perp H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)$. Therefore, using the inclusion (185), we have for $f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left.f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{q}\right)}\right) & =f P_{H_{r}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{r}\right)}} \\
& =f\left[P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)} \oplus P_{H_{r}\left(R^{R}\right)}\right] P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{q}\right)} \\
& =f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{r}\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Now, by Corollary 3, we have $H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)}=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)$ and hence (183) implies (184). Conversely, assume (165) holds. By (185), we have for every $f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$

$$
\begin{aligned}
f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\uparrow}\right)} & =f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \oplus H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\imath}\right)} \\
& =f\left[P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)}+P_{H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)}\right] P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\imath}\right)} \\
& =f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)} P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\imath}^{r}\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

as, clearly, $H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right)}=0$. Now, inequality (165) implies, once again using Corollary 3, that for every $f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$

$$
\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q_{\mu}}\right\|=\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)} P_{H_{r}\left(K_{1}\right) Q_{\uparrow}}\right\| \geq\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)} P_{H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right) Q_{\ell}}\right\|=\left\|f P_{H_{r}\left(K_{2}\right) Q_{2}}\right\|
$$

(6) $\Leftrightarrow(7)$

Assume inequality (165) holds. This implies $\operatorname{Ker}\left(H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}(Q 凶)}\right) \subset$ $\operatorname{Ker}\left(H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\beta}\right)}\right)$. Therefore there exists a map $Y: H_{r}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}\right) \rightarrow H_{r}\left(Q_{\beta}^{\beta}\right)$ for which

$$
H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)\left|P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\tilde{k}}\right)} Y=H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)\right| P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)}
$$

i.e. figure 10 commutes.

Such a map $Y$ is unique if and only $H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{\omega}\right)}$ is surjective. This, by Proposition 15 , is indeed the case. Inequality (165) shows that $Y=T_{\alpha}^{-1} T_{\beta}$ is contractive.


Figure 10.

Conversely, assume there exists a unique contraction $Y: H_{r}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}\right) \rightarrow H_{r}\left(Q_{\beta}^{\prime}\right)$ satisfying $T_{\alpha} Y=T_{\beta}$. For any $f \in H_{r}\left(Q_{\alpha}\right)$ we have $\left\|f T_{\alpha}^{-1} T_{\beta}\right\| \leq\|f\|$. Since $H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{Q}\right)}$ is surjective, we can write $f=g P_{H_{r}\left(Q_{G}\right)}=g T_{\alpha}$, with $g \in H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)$. This implies (165).
(8) $\Leftrightarrow(9)$

The proof is similar to the equivalence (6) $\Leftrightarrow(7)$. Thus, assume (167) holds. This implies $\operatorname{Ker} H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)\left|P_{H_{r}\left(K_{\beta}\right) Q_{\tilde{\beta}}} \subset \operatorname{Ker} H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)\right| P_{H_{r}\left(K_{\alpha}\right) Q_{\chi}}$. Hence there exists a map $Z: H_{r}\left(K_{\beta}\right) Q_{\overparen{\beta}} \rightarrow H_{r}\left(K_{\alpha}\right) Q_{\alpha}$ for which $R_{\beta} Z=R_{\alpha} . Z$ is uniquely determined if and only if $R_{\beta}$ is surjective, which, by Proposition 18, is the case. Now from the inequality $\left\|f R_{\alpha}\right\| \leq\left\|f R_{\beta}\right\|$, setting $f=g R_{\beta}^{-1}$, it follows that $\left\|g R_{\beta}^{-1} R_{\alpha}\right\| \leq\|f\|$, i.e. $Z$ is contractive.

Conversely, assume there exists a unique contraction $Z: H_{r}\left(K_{\beta}\right) Q_{\beta} \rightarrow$ $H_{r}\left(K_{\alpha}\right) Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}$ satisfying $R_{\beta} Z=R_{\alpha}$. Thus, for all $f_{\in H_{r}}\left(K_{\alpha}\right) Q_{\alpha}^{\prime}$, we have $\left\|f R_{\beta}^{-1} R_{\alpha}\right\| \leq\|f\|$. Setting $f=g R_{\beta}$ we obtain $\left\|g R_{\alpha}\right\| \leq\left\|g R_{\beta}\right\|$.
Remark: The equivalence between (1) and (8) is well known. For the uniform choice of basis in the state space formulation, see Caines and Delchamps (1980), and also Lindquist and Picci (1985) for the geometric approach from which these formulas are derived. The inequality (163) is very similar to the definition (155). Nevertheless, it is a more general statement about the partial ordering of inner functions, which coincides with the usual one when $\pi=I$. There is no need to introduce spectral factors to formulate this result. It seems to us that this is the actual key to the understanding of the order structure. We also point out that inequality (165) implies that the angle between the subspaces $H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)$ and $H_{r}\left(Q_{\nsim}\right)$ is smaller than the angle between $H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)$ and $H_{r}\left(Q_{\S}\right)$. Similarly inequality (167) implies that the angle between the subspaces $H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$ and $H_{r}\left(K_{\beta}\right) Q_{\beta}$ is smaller than the angle between $H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$ and $H_{r}\left(K_{\alpha}\right) Q_{\nless \alpha}$. These implications are one sided, but we refrain from a further discussion of this. Finally, one might expect that the equivalence of conditions (6) and (8) might be proved directly from the direct sum decompositions (127), however we failed to do so.
Corollary 12: With the previously defined partial order in $w^{m}, W_{-}^{e}$ and $W_{+}^{e}$ are the minimal and maximal elements respectively.
Proof: Clearly, in formula (165), the maximal element is $Q_{+}$and the minimal one is $I$, which are the inner functions corresponding to $W_{+}$and $W_{-}$, respectively.

This previous corollary explains the terminology of extremal factors for $W_{ \pm}^{e}, \bar{W}_{ \pm}^{e}$.
We turn now to the geometric structure of the set of minimal Markovian splitting subspaces. The reader familiar with stochastic realization theory will recognize the connection to the geometric constructs used in the stochastic domain. In particular, some of the spaces pertain to the zero dynamics associated with a given spectral factor, i.e. to the maximal output nulling inner (anti)-stabilizable subspaces and the input containing outer (anti)-detectable subspaces associated to any given minimal realization. This study was initialized in Lindquist et al. (1995). A further analysis will be given in Gombani and Fuhrmann (1998) and Fuhrmann (1998).

To facilitate the reading we give here a table of the basic constructs used. At the risk of repeating ourselves, we point out again that the various spaces in table 1 are a result of a normalization, where with $W_{+}$we associate the state space $H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$.

| Space | $W_{\text {- }}$ | ${ }^{\text {W }}$ | ${ }^{+}+$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $X$ | $H_{r}\left(K_{-}\right) Q_{+}$ | $H_{r}\left(K^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime}$ | $H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)$ |
| ${ }^{\text {- }}$ | $H_{+}^{2} \pi Q_{+}$ | $H_{+}^{2} \pi_{4} Q_{+}$ | $H_{+}^{2} \pi_{4} Q_{+}$ |
| $H^{+}$ | $H_{-}^{2} \pi_{1} K_{+}$ | $H_{-}^{2} \pi_{1} K_{+}$ | $H_{-}^{2} \pi_{1} k K+$ |
| $s$ | $H_{+}^{2} Q_{+}$ | $H^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}$ | $H_{+}^{2}$ |
| $\bar{s}$ | $H_{-}^{2} K_{-} Q_{+}$ | $H_{-}^{2} K Q \prime$ | $H_{-}^{2} K_{+}$ |
| $X \cap H^{-}$ | $H_{r}\left(K_{-}\right) Q_{+}$ | $\left[H_{r}\left(K^{\prime}\right) \cap H_{r}\left(K_{-}\right) Q^{\prime}\right]^{\prime \prime}$ | $H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right) \cap H_{r}\left(K_{-}\right) Q_{+}$ |
| $\operatorname{dim}\left(X \cap H^{-}\right)$ | $\delta\left(K_{-}\right)$ | $\delta(K)-\delta\left(Q^{\prime}\right)$ | $\delta\left(\kappa_{+}\right)-\delta\left(Q_{+}\right)$ |
| $X \cap H^{+}$ | $H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right) \cap H_{r}\left(K_{-}\right) Q_{+}$ | $H_{r}\left(K^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)$ | $H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)$ |
| $\operatorname{dim}\left(X \cap H^{+}\right)$ | $\delta\left(K_{-}\right)-\delta\left(Q_{-}\right)$ | $\delta(\kappa)-\delta\left(\bar{Q}{ }^{\prime \prime}\right)$ | $\delta\left(K_{+}\right)$ |
| $\left(H^{-}\right)^{\perp}{ }_{P_{X}}$ | $\{0\}$ | $\left[H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) P_{H_{r}(K)}\right]^{\prime \prime}$ | ${ }_{H}\left(Q_{+}\right) P_{H_{,}\left(K_{+}\right)}$ |
| $\left.\operatorname{dim}\left[H^{-}\right)^{\perp_{P_{X}}}\right]$ | 0 | $\delta\left(Q^{\prime}\right)$ | $\delta\left(Q_{+}\right)$ |
| $\left(H^{+}\right)^{\perp}{ }_{P_{X}}$ | $\left.H^{( } Q_{-}\right) K_{+} P_{H_{\sim}\left(K_{-}\right)} Q_{+}$ | $\left[H^{r}(\bar{Q} \prime \prime) K_{+}\right]^{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}$ | \{0, |
| $\left.\operatorname{dim}\left[H^{+}\right)^{\perp}\right]_{x}$ | $\delta\left(g_{-}\right)$ | $\delta\left(\bar{Q}{ }^{\prime \prime}\right)$ | 0 |

Table 1.

Theorem 10: Let $W$ be a minimal, stable spectral factor. Let $W=\bar{W} K$ be its DSS factorization over $H_{-}^{\infty}$. Let the inner functions $Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}, Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}$ be determined by Proposition 13, and let $Q_{+}^{e}, Q_{-}^{e}, K_{+}^{e}, K_{-}^{e}$ be the inner functions for which diagram 2 commutes.

Definite the spaces $X, S$ and $\bar{S}$ as in Proposition 18, i.e.

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
X=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}  \tag{186}\\
S=H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime} \\
\bar{S}=H_{-}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

and the subspaces $H^{-}$and $H^{+}$by

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
H^{-}=H_{+}^{2} \pi_{1} Q_{+}  \tag{187}\\
H^{+}=H_{-}^{2} \pi_{1} K_{+}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Then:
(1) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
X \cap H^{-}=\left[H_{r}(K) \cap H_{r}\left(K_{-}\right) Q^{\prime}\right] Q^{\prime \prime}  \tag{188}\\
X \cap H^{+}=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(2) If $X, Y \subset H_{+}^{2}$ and $Y \subset X$ denote by $Y_{X}^{\perp}$ the orthogonal complement of $Y$ in $X$. We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
\left(X \cap H^{-}\right)_{X}^{\perp}=\left(H^{-}\right) \frac{\perp}{X}=\left(H^{-}\right)^{\perp} P_{X}=\left[H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) P_{H_{r}(K)}\right] Q^{\prime \prime}  \tag{189}\\
\left(X \cap H^{+}\right)_{X}^{\perp}=\left(H^{+}\right)^{\perp} P_{X}=\left(H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(3) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
\operatorname{dim}\left(H^{+}\right)^{\perp} P_{X}=\delta\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right)  \tag{190}\\
\operatorname{dim}\left(H^{-}\right)^{\perp} P_{X}=\delta\left(Q^{\prime}\right)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(4) We have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
\operatorname{dim}\left(X \cap H^{-}\right)=\delta(K)-\delta\left(Q^{\prime}\right)  \tag{191}\\
\operatorname{dim}\left(X \cap H^{+}\right)=\delta(K)-\delta\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right)
\end{array}\right\}
$$

## Proof:

(1) In view of equation (75) and the fact, see Lemma 7, that $Q_{+} \pi_{1}=\pi_{4} Q_{+}$, we have the equality $K_{-}^{e} Q_{+}^{e} \pi_{1}=\bar{Q}^{\prime} K Q ״ \pi_{4}$. Thus we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
X \cap H^{-} & =H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H_{+}^{2} \pi_{1} Q_{+}=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H_{+}^{2} Q_{+}^{e} \pi_{1} \\
& =\bar{H}_{r}\left(K^{*}\right) K Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H_{+}^{2}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right)^{*} K_{-}^{e} Q_{+}^{e} \pi_{1} \\
& =\bar{H}_{r}\left(K^{*}\right) K Q^{\prime \prime} \cap\left[H_{+}^{2}+\bar{H}_{r}\left(\left(K_{-}^{e}\right)^{*}\right)\right] K_{-}^{e} Q_{+}^{e} \pi_{4} \\
& =\left[H_{r}\left(K^{*}\right)\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*} \cap H_{+}^{2}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right)^{*} K_{-}^{e} Q_{+}^{e} \pi_{1}\right. \\
& =\left[H_{r}\left(K^{*}\right)\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*} \cap\left(H_{+}^{2} \oplus H_{r}\left(\left(K_{-}^{e}\right)^{*}\right)\right)\right] K_{-}^{e} Q_{+}^{e} \pi_{1} \\
& =\left[H_{r}\left(K^{*}\right)\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right)^{*} \cap H_{r}\left(\left(K_{-}^{e}\right)^{*}\right)\right] K_{-}^{e} Q_{+}^{e} \pi_{1} \\
& =H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) \tau_{1} Q_{+}^{3} \\
& =\left[H_{r}(K) \cap H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q^{\prime}\right] Q^{\prime \prime}
\end{aligned}
$$

where in the last equality we have used the fact that $H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) \tau_{\mathrm{r}}=H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right)$ and therefore the projection can be eliminated. Similarly

$$
\begin{aligned}
X \cap H^{+} & =H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H_{-}^{2} \pi_{-} K_{+}=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H_{-}^{2} K_{+}^{e} \\
& \left.=H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \cap\left[H_{-}^{2} \oplus H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)\right]\right]^{4} \\
& =H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

(2) We compute first the orthogonal complement of $X \cap H^{-}$in $L^{2}$. We use the decomposition $\left(H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}\right)^{\mathcal{1}}=H_{+}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \oplus H_{-}^{2} \quad$ and $\quad\left(H_{+}^{2} Q_{+}^{e}\right)^{\perp}=$ $H_{-}^{2} Q_{+}^{e}$, as well as the equality $H_{-}^{2} Q_{+}^{e}=H_{-}^{2} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q_{+}^{e}\right)$ to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(X \cap H^{-}\right)^{\perp} & =\left(H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q_{+}^{e}\right)^{\perp} \\
& =\left(H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}\right)^{\perp}+\left(H_{r}\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q_{+}^{e}\right)^{\perp} \\
& =\left[H_{+}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{-}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}\right]+\left[H_{+}^{2} K_{-}^{e} Q_{+}^{e} \oplus H_{-}^{2} Q_{+}^{e}\right] \\
& =\left[H_{+}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{-}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}\right]+\left[H_{+}^{2} \bar{Q}^{\prime} K Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(R^{e}\right) \oplus H_{-}^{2} Q_{+}^{e}\right] \\
& =\left[H_{+}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{-}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}\right]+\left[H_{+}^{2} \bar{Q}^{\prime} K Q 2 \oplus H_{-}^{2} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \oplus H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Projecting orthogonally on $H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}$ we obtain the equality

$$
\left(X \cap H^{-}\right)_{X}^{\perp}=H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime} P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}=\left[H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) P_{H_{r}(K)}\right]^{\prime \prime}
$$

Similarly, we compute the $L^{2}$ orthogonal complement of $X \cap H^{+}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(X \cap H^{+}\right)^{\perp} & =H_{+}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime}+H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)+H_{-}^{2}+H_{+}^{2} K_{+}+H^{2} \\
& =H_{+}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime}+H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)+H_{-}^{2}+\left(H_{+}^{2} \overline{\left.Q^{\prime \prime}+H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right)\right) K_{+}}\right. \\
& =H_{+}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime}+H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)+H_{-}^{2}+H_{+}^{2} \overline{Q^{\prime \prime} K_{+}+H_{r}\left(\overline{\left.Q^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}}\right.} \begin{aligned}
& =H_{+}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime}+H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)+H_{-}^{2}+H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}
\end{aligned}, l
\end{aligned}
$$

Projecting orthogonally on $X=H_{r}(K) Q$ " we get

$$
\left(X \cap H^{+}\right)_{X}^{\perp}=\left(H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime}\right) K_{+}^{e}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}
$$

as all other components are orthogonal to $X$.
(3) We need to show that $\operatorname{dim}_{-}\left(H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}\right) P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}=\delta\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right)$. For this it suffices to show that the map $H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+} \mid P_{H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime}}$ is injective. But this follows from Lemma 5. Similarly for $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) Q^{\prime \prime} \mid P_{H_{r}(K) Q "}$.
(4) It follows from (3), since $\operatorname{dim}\left(X \cap H_{-}\right)=\operatorname{dim} X-\operatorname{dim}\left(X \cap H_{-}\right) \frac{\perp}{X}=$ $\delta(K)-\delta\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)$. Similarly for $\operatorname{dim}\left(X \cap H_{-}\right)$.

Remark: It should be noted that in the Lindquist-Picci framework the multiplicity of $K_{+}$could be strictly less than the rank of $\Phi$. This implies that $H^{-}$is not necessarily contained in the past of the state process of the realization. Since we do assume that the multiplicity of $K_{+}$is $m_{0}$, this can never happen. As we said, this is a rather special situation and we will not dwell on it here.

The set $w^{m_{0}}$ inherits the partial order from $\mathcal{w}^{m}$ and, as $W_{-}^{e}, W_{+}^{e} \in \mathcal{W}^{m_{0}}$, they are the minimal and maximal elements respectively of $w^{m_{0}}$ with respect to this partial order. The set $w^{m}$ and its relation to $w^{m_{0}}$ will be studied via the arithmetic properties of inner functions.

Given a minimal, stable $p \times m$ spectral factor $W$, we say, again following Lindquist and Picci (1991), that a pair of internal spectral factors $W_{0-}$, $W_{0+} \in W^{m_{0}}$ is a tightest internal bound for $W$ if
(1) We have

$$
W_{0-} \leq W \leq W_{0+}
$$

(2) Given $W_{1}, W_{2} \in \mathcal{W}^{m_{0}}$ for which $W_{1} \leq W \leq W_{2}$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
W_{1} & \leq W_{0-} \\
W_{0+} & \leq W_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

We can state now:
Proposition 20: Let $W$ be an arbitrary minimal, stable $p \times m$ spectral factor $W$. Then
(1) A tightest internal bound for $W$ exists.
(2) The tightest internal bound can be characterized as follows. Let $Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}$ be the inner functions determined by Proposition 13. Let

$$
\begin{aligned}
& Q^{\prime}=Q \uparrow Q \ell \\
& Q^{\prime \prime}=Q^{2} Q \Re
\end{aligned}
$$

be the internal-external and external internal factorizations of $Q^{\prime}$ and $Q^{\prime \prime}$ respectively. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
W_{0_{-}} & =W_{-}^{e} Q_{1} \\
W_{0_{+}} & =W_{+}^{e}(Q 饣)^{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof: Follows from Theorem 4.
Proposition 20 gave an arithmetic characterization of the tightest internal bound for a given minimal, stable spectral factor. We proceed next to derive a geometric characterization for it.

Proposition 21: Given a minimal, stable spectral factor $W$, let $W_{0-}$, $W_{0+}$ be the tightest internal bound. Let $S_{0_{-}}, \bar{S}_{0_{-}}$and $S_{0_{+}}, \bar{S}_{0_{+}}$be defined, as in Proposition 18, for $W_{0_{-}}$and $W_{0_{+}}$respectively. Let $H_{0}=L^{2} \tau_{1}$, i.e. it is the subspace of $L^{2}$ of all those functions whose last $m-m_{0}$ coordinates vanish. Then, with the notation of Theorem 4,
(1) We have $S_{0-}=S \cap H_{0}$, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{+}^{2} Q Q^{\prime}=H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime} \cap L^{2} \pi^{\prime} \tag{192}
\end{equation*}
$$

(2) We have $S_{0+}=S P_{H_{0}}$, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{+}^{2} \pi Q_{r}=H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime} \pi_{r} \tag{193}
\end{equation*}
$$

(3) We have $\bar{S}_{0-}=\bar{S} P_{H_{0}}$, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{-}^{2} K_{0-} Q Q \uparrow=H_{-}^{2} K Q ״ \tau_{\square} \tag{194}
\end{equation*}
$$

(4) We gave $\bar{S}_{0+}=\bar{S} \cap H_{0}$, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{-}^{2} K_{0+} Q r=H_{-}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime} \cap L^{2} \tau_{1} \tag{195}
\end{equation*}
$$

(5) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{0-} \cap \bar{S}_{0-}=H_{r}\left(K_{0-}\right) Q Q \uparrow \tag{196}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{0+} \cap \bar{S}_{0+}=H_{r}\left(K_{0+} Q \uparrow\right. \tag{197}
\end{equation*}
$$

(6) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
X \cap H_{0}=\left(H_{r}\left(K_{0+}\right) \cap H_{+}^{2} Q\right) Q \uparrow \tag{198}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim} Z \cap H_{0}=\delta(K)-\delta(Q \xi) \tag{199}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Proof:

(1) We proved in Proposition 15 that $H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1}=H_{r}(Q Q \uparrow)$. This means that

$$
H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right) \pi_{1}+H_{+}^{2} \pi_{\underline{\underline{6}}}=H_{r}\left(Q Q_{\uparrow}\right)+H_{+}^{2} \tau_{\underline{\underline{V}}}
$$

Taking orthogonal complements in $H_{+}^{2}$, we obtain

$$
H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime} \cap L^{2} \pi_{\mathrm{q}}=H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime} \cap H^{2} \pi_{1}=H_{r}(Q Q r)
$$

(2) We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime} \pi_{1} & =H_{+}^{2} Q_{2} Q_{饣} \pi_{1} \\
& =H_{+}^{2} Q_{2} \pi_{1} Q_{\imath} \subset H_{+}^{2} \pi_{1} Q 饣
\end{aligned}
$$

We will show that $H_{+}^{2} Q_{2} \pi_{1}=H_{+}^{2} \pi_{4}$, which will prove the assertion. In fact, $H_{+}^{2} Q_{2} \pi_{1}$ is an $H_{+}^{\infty}$-invariant subspace of $H_{+}^{2} \pi_{4}$, hence of the form $H_{+}^{2} \pi_{4} T$ for some inner function $T$. Clearly, $T$ has a representation of the form

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
T_{0} & 0 \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

and is a right factor of $Q^{\prime}$, and so also of $Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime}$. Thus $T Q \not q^{\prime}$ is a right factor of $Q_{+}$, however this contradicts the fact that the greatest common right divisor of $Q^{\prime \prime}$ and $Q_{+}^{e}$ is $Q^{\prime}$. Thus $T$ is necessarily constant unitary.
(3) Referring to figure 5 , we have the equality $K_{0-} Q_{2}=Q_{2} K$. We compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H_{-}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime} \pi_{1}=H_{-}^{2}\left(\bar{Q}_{2}\right)^{*} K_{0-} Q_{2} Q^{\prime \prime} \pi_{1} \\
& =H_{-}^{2}\left(\bar{Q}_{2}\right)^{*} K_{0-} Q_{2} Q_{z} Q_{\imath} \pi_{\tau} \\
& =H_{-}^{2}\left(\bar{Q}_{2}\right)^{*} K_{0-}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) Q_{\uparrow} \pi_{1} \\
& =H_{-}^{2}\left(\bar{Q}_{2}\right)^{*} \pi_{1} K_{0-} Q Q_{r} \\
& =H_{-}^{2} \tau_{1} K_{0-} Q Q^{\mu}
\end{aligned}
$$

We have used the fact that $H_{-}^{2}\left(\bar{Q}_{2}\right)^{*} \pi_{\mathrm{I}}$ is an $H_{-}^{\infty}$-invariant subspace of $H_{-}^{2}$, hence of the form $H_{-}^{2} \pi_{1} T^{*}$ for some inner function $T$. Such a function would be a common left factor of $\bar{Q}^{2} \bar{Q}^{\prime \prime}$ which is necessarily trivial.
(4) Referring to figure 5 , we have $K Q \not \approx=\bar{Q} \not z K_{0+}$. We compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H_{-}^{2} K Q^{\prime \prime} \cap L^{2} \tau_{1}=H_{-}^{2} K Q_{z} Q_{\imath} \cap L^{2} \tau_{1} \\
& =H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q}_{z} K_{K_{0+}} Q_{\ell} \cap L^{2} \tau_{1} \\
& =\left(H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q} z \cap L^{2} \tau_{1}\right) K_{0+} Q r \\
& =H_{-}^{2} K_{0+} Q \boldsymbol{Q}
\end{aligned}
$$

Using arguments as above, we used the fact that $H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q}^{\ell} \cap L^{2} \pi_{1}=H_{-}^{2} \cap L^{2} \pi_{1}$.
(5) By trivial computations.
(6) Since $X=S \cap \bar{S}$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
X \cap H_{0} & =(S \cap \bar{S}) \cap H_{0}=\left(S \cap H_{0}\right) \cap\left(\bar{S} \cap H_{0}\right) \\
& =S_{0-} \cap S_{0+}=H_{+}^{2} Q Q \uparrow \cap H_{-}^{2} K_{0+} Q \uparrow \\
& =\left(H_{r}\left(K_{0+}\right) \cap H_{+}^{2} Q\right) Q \uparrow
\end{aligned}
$$

By Proposition 17, the Toeplitz operator $\mathcal{T}_{K_{0}+}^{r} Q^{*}$ is injective, hence, by Theorem 1, we have $H_{+}^{2} K_{0_{+}} \cap H_{r}(Q)=0$. We compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{dim} X \cap H_{0} & =\operatorname{dim} H_{r}\left(K_{0+}\right) \cap H_{+}^{2} Q=\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{T}_{Q K_{0+}^{*}}^{r} \\
& =\operatorname{codim}\left(H_{+}^{2} K_{0+}+H_{r}(Q)\right) \\
& =\delta\left(K_{0+}\right)-\delta(Q) \\
& =\delta(K)-\delta(Q \xi)
\end{aligned}
$$

This means that the dimension of $X \cap H_{0}$ is smaller than the dimension of $X$ exactly by the number of external zeros of $W$.

Remarks: We would like to stress that the above results are much harder to prove if instead of the extended scattering pairs we try to use those defined in Proposition 19. A glance at the formulas appearing in Theorem 10 will convince the initiated reader that there are very close links here to geometric control theory. The study of these links is beyond the scope of this paper and will be relegated to subsequent publications.

We focus now on the analysis of the lattice structure of the sets $w^{m}$ and $x^{m}$. Unhappily, we cannot prove that $w^{m}$ is a complete lattice. In fact, in view of the fact that the set of all non-negative matrices is not a complete lattice, see Ex. 9 on p. 142 of Halmos (1958), it is doubtful whether $w^{m}$ is a complete lattice. However, some results are obtainable, in special cases. The analysis uses the arithmetic of inner functions. Of course, this arithmetic is reflected in the geometry of splitting sub-


Figure 11.
spaces. We begin by proving the following proposition. In following the proof, it may be convenient to refer to figure 5.

Proposition 22: Denote by $w_{R}^{m}$ the set of all minimal, stable spectral factors of size $p \times m$ for which, with the notation of Theorem 4, we have

$$
Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

Let $W_{\alpha}, W_{\beta} \in \mathcal{W}_{R}^{m}$. Let $S_{W_{\alpha}}, S_{W_{\beta}}$ be defined by (129). Then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{W_{\alpha}} \cap S_{W_{\beta}}=H_{+}^{2}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime} \vee_{L} Q_{ß}^{\nless}\right) \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $Q_{\alpha} \bigvee_{L} Q_{ß}$ is the least common left inner multiple of $Q_{\alpha}$ and $Q_{\beta}$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{W_{\alpha}}+S_{W_{\beta}}=H_{+}^{2}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime} \wedge R Q_{ß}\right) \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $Q_{\alpha}^{\nsim} \wedge_{R} Q_{\beta}^{\beta}$ is the greatest common right inner divisor of $Q_{\alpha}$ and $Q_{\beta}^{\beta}$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{S}_{W_{\alpha}} \cap \bar{S}_{W_{\beta}}=H_{-}^{2}\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime} \wedge{ }_{R} \bar{Q}_{\beta}\right) K_{+}^{e} \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

(4)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{S}_{W_{\alpha}}+\bar{S}_{W_{\beta}}=H_{-}^{2}\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime} \vee_{L} \bar{Q}_{\overparen{\beta}}\right) K_{+}^{e} \tag{203}
\end{equation*}
$$

(5) (a) There exists a unique inner function $K_{\bigvee}$ satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{\bigvee}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\mu} \vee_{L} Q_{ß \beta}^{\prime}\right)=\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\prime \alpha} \vee_{L} \bar{Q}_{\sharp}\right) K_{+}^{e} \tag{204}
\end{equation*}
$$

(b) There exists a unique inner function $K_{\wedge}$ satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{\wedge}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\mu} \wedge R Q_{ß}\right)=\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha} \wedge R \bar{Q}_{ß}\right) K_{+}^{e} \tag{205}
\end{equation*}
$$

(6) There exist inner functions $Z, \bar{Z}$ for which

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{\bigvee} Z=\bar{Z} K_{\wedge} \tag{206}
\end{equation*}
$$

(7) Define rational functions $W_{\bigvee}, W_{\wedge}$ by

Then $W_{\bigvee}, W_{\wedge}$ are minimal, stable spectral factors.
(8) $\bar{W}_{\bigvee}, \bar{W}_{\wedge}$ defined by

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
\bar{W}_{\vee}=W_{\vee} K_{\vee}^{*}  \tag{208}\\
\bar{W}_{\wedge}=W_{\wedge} K_{\wedge}^{*}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

are antistable spectral factors.
(9) For $Z, \bar{Z}$, we have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
W_{\vee} Z=W_{\wedge}  \tag{209}\\
\bar{W}_{\vee} \bar{Z}=\bar{W}_{\wedge}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

(10) We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(S_{W_{\alpha}} \cap S_{W_{\beta}}\right) \cap\left(\bar{S}_{W_{\alpha}}+\bar{S}_{W_{\beta}}\right)=H_{r}\left(K_{\vee}\right)\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\beta} \vee_{L} Q_{\beta}^{\prime}\right) \tag{210}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(S_{W_{\alpha}}+S_{W_{\beta}}\right) \cap\left(\bar{S}_{W_{\alpha}} \cap \bar{S}_{W_{\beta}}\right)=H_{r}\left(K_{\wedge}\right)\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \wedge} \wedge_{R} Q_{ß}^{\nless}\right) \tag{211}
\end{equation*}
$$

So $\left(S_{W_{\alpha}} \cap S_{W_{\beta}}, \bar{S}_{W_{\alpha}}+\bar{S}_{W_{\beta}}\right)$ is a scattering pair for $W_{\vee}$.
Similarly, $\left(S_{W_{\alpha}}+S_{W_{\beta}}, \bar{S}_{W_{\alpha}} \cap S_{W_{\beta}}\right)$ is a scattering pair for $W_{\wedge}$.

## Proof:

(1) We compute

$$
S_{W_{\alpha}} \cap S_{W_{\beta}}=H_{+}^{2} Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \mu} \cap H_{+}^{2} Q_{\beta}^{\beta}=H_{+}^{2}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\mathcal{\alpha}} \vee_{L} Q_{\beta}^{\beta}\right)
$$

(2) Similarly,

$$
S_{W_{\alpha}}+S_{W_{\beta}}=H_{+}^{2} Q_{\alpha}^{\mu}+H_{+}^{2} Q_{\beta}^{\beta}=H_{+}^{2}\left(Q_{\alpha} \wedge_{R} Q_{\beta}\right)
$$

(3) The algebra becomes a bit more complicated in the complementary computations of $\bar{S}_{W_{\alpha}} \cap \bar{S}_{W_{\beta}}$ and $\bar{S}_{W_{\alpha}}+\bar{S}_{W_{\beta}}$. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& K_{\alpha} Q_{\alpha}^{\mu}=\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\ddot{\alpha}} K_{+}^{e} \\
& K_{\beta} Q_{\beta}^{\prime}=\bar{Q}_{\beta} K_{+}^{e}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \bar{S}_{W_{\alpha}} \cap \bar{S}_{W_{\beta}}=H_{-}^{2} K_{\alpha} Q_{\alpha}^{\mu} \cap H_{-}^{2} K_{\beta} Q_{\beta}=H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\ddot{\alpha}} K_{+}^{e} \cap H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q}_{\beta} K_{+}^{e} \\
& =\left[H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q}_{\alpha} \cap H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q}_{ß}\right] K_{+}^{e}=\left[\left(H_{-}^{2} \oplus H\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}\right)\right) \cap\left(H_{-}^{2} \oplus H\left(\bar{Q}_{\beta}^{\beta}\right)\right)\right] K_{+}^{e} \\
& =\left[H_{-}^{2} \oplus\left(H\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}\right) \cap H\left(\bar{Q}_{\beta}^{\beta}\right)\right)\right] K_{+}^{e}=\left[H_{-}^{2} \oplus H\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime} \wedge_{R} \bar{Q}_{\beta}\right)\right] K_{+}^{e} \\
& =H_{-}^{2}\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\mu} \wedge_{R} \bar{Q}_{\beta}^{\prime \prime}\right) K_{+}^{e}
\end{aligned}
$$

(4) Similarly,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \bar{S}_{W_{\alpha}}+\bar{S}_{W_{\beta}}=H_{-}^{2} K_{\alpha} Q^{\Psi}+H_{-}^{2} K_{\beta} Q_{\beta}=H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q}_{\alpha} K_{+}^{e}+H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q}_{\beta} K_{+}^{e} \\
& =\left[H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q}_{\ddot{\alpha}}+H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q}_{\beta}\right] K_{+}^{e}=\left[H_{-}^{2}\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha \alpha} V_{L} \bar{Q}_{\beta}\right)\right] K_{+}^{e} \\
& =H_{-}^{2} K_{\bigvee}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime} \bigvee_{L} Q_{\beta}^{\prime}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

(5) (a) By (69), we have

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
K_{\alpha} Q_{\alpha}=\overline{Q_{\alpha}} K_{+}^{e}  \tag{212}\\
K_{\beta} Q_{\beta}=\bar{Q} \not K_{+}^{e}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Then we have

$$
T=K_{\alpha} Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime} \vee_{L} K_{\beta} Q_{ß}^{\beta}=\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\ddot{\alpha}} K_{+}^{e} \vee_{L} \bar{Q}_{\beta}^{\beta} K_{+}^{e}=\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime} \vee_{L} \bar{Q}_{\check{\beta}}\right) K_{+}^{e}
$$

Thus there exist inner functions $Y_{\alpha}, Y_{\beta}$ for which

$$
T=Y_{\alpha} Q_{\alpha}^{\mu}=Y_{\beta} Q_{\beta}^{\beta}
$$

Since $Q_{\alpha}^{\mu} V_{L} Q_{\beta}^{\beta}$ divides $T$ on the right, it follows that there exists an inner function $K_{\vee}$ for which (204) holds.
(b) Similarly,

$$
S=K_{\alpha} Q_{\alpha}^{\mu} \wedge{ }_{R} K_{\beta} Q_{\overparen{\beta}}=\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\mu} K_{+}^{e} \wedge_{R} \bar{Q}_{\beta} K_{+}^{e}=\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\mu} \wedge R{ }_{Q} \bar{Q}_{\beta}\right) K_{+}^{e}
$$

Clearly, $Q_{\ddot{\alpha}} \wedge_{R} Q_{\beta}$ divides $S$ on the right, hence it follows that there exists an inner function $K_{\wedge}$ for which (205) holds.
(6) Clearly $Q_{\alpha}^{\mu} \wedge^{\wedge} R_{R} Q_{\beta}$ divides $Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime} \bigvee_{L} Q_{\beta}^{\beta}$ on the right. Thus there exists an inner function $Z$ satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{\alpha} \vee_{L} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}=Z\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\alpha} \vee_{R} Q_{ß<\beta}\right) \tag{213}
\end{equation*}
$$

Analogously, there exists an inner function $\bar{Z}$ satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\mu} \vee_{L} \bar{Q}_{\beta}=\bar{Z}\left(Q_{\mu}^{\mu} \wedge_{R} \bar{Q}_{ß}\right) \tag{214}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
& K_{\bigvee} Z^{\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime} \wedge_{R} Q_{\beta}^{\beta}\right)}=K_{\bigvee}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime} \vee_{L} Q_{\beta}^{\beta}\right)=\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\prime \alpha} \vee_{L} \bar{Q}_{\beta}\right) K_{+}^{e} \\
& =\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\prime \alpha} \vee_{L} \bar{Q}_{\beta}\right)\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime} \wedge_{R} \bar{Q}_{\beta}\right)^{*}\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}{ }^{\wedge}{ }_{R} \bar{Q}_{\beta}\right) K_{+}^{e} \\
& =\bar{Z}\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\prime \alpha} \wedge_{R} \bar{Q}_{\overparen{\beta}}\right) K_{+}^{e} \\
& =\bar{Z} K_{\wedge}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\mu} \wedge_{R} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence equality (206) follows.
(7) As $\left(Q_{\mathcal{\alpha}} \wedge_{R} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)^{*}$ is unitary on the imaginary axis, it follows that $W_{\wedge}$ is a spectral factor. The same holds for $W_{V}$. We have $W_{+}^{e}=W_{\alpha} Q_{\alpha}^{\alpha}=W_{\beta} Q_{\beta}$. This clearly implies that $W_{\wedge}=W_{+}^{e}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\alpha} \wedge_{R} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)^{*} \in H_{+}^{\infty}$. The minimality of $W_{\wedge}$ follows from Theorem 2.

Similarly, by our assumption that $W_{\alpha}, W_{\beta} \in W_{R}^{m}$, we have that both $Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}$ and $Q_{\beta}$ are right factors of the inner function

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

Hence $Q_{\alpha}^{\beta} V_{L} Q_{\beta}^{\beta}$ is also a right factor. This implies $W_{+}^{e}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\beta} V_{L} Q_{\beta}\right)^{*} \in H_{+}^{\infty}$. Invoking Theorem 2 once again, we conclude that $W_{V}$ is a minimal, stable spectral factor.
(8) We compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bar{W}_{\wedge} & =W_{\wedge} K_{\wedge}^{*}=W_{+}^{e}\left(Q_{\tilde{\alpha}} \wedge_{R} Q_{\mathcal{Z}}\right)^{*} K_{\wedge}^{*} \\
& =W_{+}^{e}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)^{*}\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha} \wedge R\right. \\
& \left.=\bar{Q}_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)^{*} \\
& =\bar{W}_{+}^{e}\left(\bar{Q}_{\alpha}^{\mathcal{\alpha}}{ }_{R} \bar{Q}_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)^{*} \in H_{-}^{\infty}
\end{aligned}
$$

(9) Using equality (213), we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
W_{\vee} Z & =W_{+}^{e}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\mu} \vee_{L} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)^{*}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \alpha} \vee_{L} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime} \wedge_{R} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)^{*} \\
& =W_{+}^{e}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime} \wedge_{R} Q_{\beta}^{\prime}\right)^{*}=W_{\wedge}
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly, using equality (214), we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \bar{W}_{\vee} \bar{Z}=W_{\vee} K_{V}^{*} \bar{Z}=W_{\vee} Z K_{\wedge}^{*} \\
& =W_{+}^{e}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{z} \vee_{L} Q_{\beta}\right)^{*}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{z} \vee_{L} Q_{\beta}^{\beta}\right)\left(Q_{\alpha} \wedge_{R} Q_{\beta}\right)^{*} K_{\wedge}^{*} \\
& =W_{\wedge} K_{\wedge}^{*}=\bar{W}_{\wedge}
\end{aligned}
$$

(10) We compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(S_{W_{\alpha}} \cap S_{W_{\beta}}\right) \cap\left(\bar{S}_{W_{\alpha}}+\bar{S}_{W_{\beta}}\right) & =H_{+}^{2}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime} \bigvee_{L} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right) \cap H_{-}^{2} K_{\bigvee}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime} \bigvee_{L} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right) \\
& =\left(H_{+}^{2} \cap H_{-}^{2} K_{\bigvee}\right)\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime \alpha} \bigvee_{L} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right) \\
& =H_{r}\left(K_{\vee}\right)\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\prime} \vee_{L} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly, we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(S_{W_{\alpha}}+S_{W_{\beta}}\right) \cap\left(\bar{S}_{W_{\alpha}} \cap \bar{S}_{w_{\beta}}\right)=H_{+}^{2}\left(Q_{\alpha \sim}^{\alpha} \vee_{R} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right) \cap H_{-}^{2}\left(\bar{Q}_{\tilde{\alpha} \wedge R} \bar{Q}_{\tilde{\beta}}\right) K_{+}^{e} \\
& =H_{+}^{2}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} \wedge_{R} Q_{\overparen{\beta}}\right) \cap H_{-}^{2} K_{\wedge}\left(Q_{\alpha} \wedge_{R} Q_{\beta}\right) \\
& =\left(H_{+}^{2} \cap H_{-}^{2} K_{\wedge}\right)\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\tilde{\alpha}} \wedge_{R} Q_{\tilde{\beta}}\right) \\
& =H_{r}\left(K_{\wedge}\right)\left(Q_{\tilde{\alpha}} \wedge R Q_{\beta}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Corollary 13: The set $w_{0}$ of all minimal, stable, internal spectral factors is a complete lattice.
Proof: We apply the previous theorem for the case $R=I$.
The following is our version of Theorem 6.8 in Lindquist and Picci (1991).

## Theorem 11:

(1) Let $X_{i} \in x^{m_{0}}, i=1,2$. Then the following statements are equivalent:
(a) $X_{1} \leq X_{2}$
(b) $S_{1} \subset S_{2}$
(c) $\bar{S}_{2} \subset \bar{S}_{1}$
(2) Let $X_{1} \in x^{m_{0}}, X_{2} \in x^{m}$. Then the following statements are equivalent:
(a) $X_{1} \leq X_{2}$
(b) $S_{1} \subset S_{2}$
(c) $\bar{S}_{2} \pi_{1} \subset \bar{S}_{1}$
(3) Let $X_{2} \in x^{m_{0}}, X_{1} \in x^{m}$. Then the following statements are equivalent:
(a) $X_{1} \leq X_{2}$
(b) $S_{1} \pi_{1} \subset S_{2}$
(c) $\bar{S}_{2} \subset \bar{S}_{1}$

## Proof:

(1) Assume $X_{1} \leq X_{2}$. By Theorem 8, this is equivalent to $W_{1} Q=W_{2}$ or to $Q \Re=Q Q \%$. We compute

$$
S_{W_{1}}=H_{+}^{2} Q r=H_{+}^{2} Q Q \nless \subset H_{+}^{2} Q \nsucceq=S_{W_{2}}
$$

Conversely, assume $S_{W_{1}} \subset S_{W_{2}}$, i.e. $H_{+}^{2} Q^{\Re} \subset H_{+}^{2} Q^{\ell}$. This inclusion implies the existence of an inner function $Q$ such that $Q r=Q Q z$. Therefore

$$
W_{2}=W_{+}^{e}(Q z)^{*}=W_{+}^{e}(Q r)^{*} Q=W_{1} Q
$$

that is $W_{1} \leq W_{2}$ and hence $X_{1} \leq X_{2}$.
Assume $W_{1}<W_{2}$. Since both factors are internal, this means that there exists an inner function $Q$ for which $W_{2}=W_{1} Q$. In turn we have, using the standard notation, that $K_{1} Q=\bar{Q} K_{2}$. We proceed to compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bar{S}_{2} & =H_{-}^{2} K_{2} Q \sharp=H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q}^{*} K_{1} Q Q ళ \\
& =H_{-}^{2} \bar{Q}^{*} K_{1} Q \Re \subset H_{-}^{2} K_{1} Q \uparrow=\bar{S}_{1}
\end{aligned}
$$

Conversely, assume $\bar{S}_{2} \subset \bar{S}_{1}$, i.e. $H_{-}^{2} K_{2} Q \mathbb{Z} \subset H_{-}^{2} K_{1} Q \mathbb{T}$. This means the_existence of an inner function $\bar{Q}$ for which $Q K_{2} Q \notin=K_{1} Q r$. Since $K_{i} Q_{i}^{\prime \prime}=\bar{Q}_{i}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}$, we have $\overline{Q Q_{2}^{\prime \prime}}=\bar{Q} \uparrow$. This means that $\bar{W}_{1} \leq \bar{W}_{2}$ and hence that $W_{1} \leq W_{2}$. This is equivalent to $X_{1} \leq X_{2}$.
(2) Assume $X_{1} \leq X_{2}$ and $X_{1}$ internal. Let $X_{2}$ - be the greatest internal lower bound for $X_{2}$. By Proposition 21 we have $S_{2_{-}}=S_{2} \cap H_{0}$. Thus, by part 1,

$$
S_{1} \subset S_{2-}=S_{2} \cap H_{0} \subset S_{2}
$$

Conversely, assume $S_{1} \subset S_{2}$. This implies

$$
S_{1}=S_{1} \cap H_{0} \subset S_{2} \cap H_{0}=S_{2-}
$$

or $X_{1} \leq X_{2-} \leq X_{2}$.
Assuming $X_{1} \leq X_{2}$ we obtain as before $X_{1} \leq X_{2-}$. Since $X_{1}, X_{2}$ - are both internal, we can apply part 1, to get $S_{2-} \subset S_{1}$. Since, by Proposition 21, we have $\bar{S}_{2-}=\bar{S}_{2} \pi_{1}$, it follows that $S_{2} \pi_{4} \subset \bar{S}_{1}$.

Conversely, assuming the last inclusion, we get $X_{1} \leq X_{2-} \leq X_{2}$.
(3) This follows from the previous part by symmetry, or can be proved directly in an analogous way.

To get some feeling about external factors, we work out a very simple example.
Example: Let us take the minimum phase spectral factor

$$
W_{-}=\frac{z+1}{z+3}
$$

and the corresponding maximum phase spectral factor

$$
W_{+}=\frac{1-z}{z+3}
$$

Given a pair of complex numbers $\alpha, \beta$, satisfying $|\alpha|^{2}+|\beta|^{2}=1$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
W=\frac{1}{z+3}[\alpha(1+z) \beta(1-z)] \tag{215}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a $1 \times 2$ spectral factor. We set

$$
W_{-}^{e}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\frac{z+1}{z+3} & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

It is easily computed that

$$
\begin{aligned}
Q^{\prime} & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\alpha & \beta \frac{1-z}{1+z} \\
-\bar{\beta} & \bar{\alpha} \frac{1-z}{1+z}
\end{array}\right), \quad Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\bar{\alpha} \frac{1-z}{1+z} & -\beta \frac{1-z}{1+z} \\
\bar{\beta} & \alpha
\end{array}\right) \\
Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime} & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\frac{1-z}{1+z} & 0 \\
0 & \frac{1-z}{1+z}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

For the DSS factorization we have

$$
\bar{W}=\frac{1}{z-3}[\alpha(1+z) \beta(1-z)]
$$

and

$$
K=\frac{z-3}{z+3}
$$

For $f \in H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$, which up to a constant factor, is given by

$$
f=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\frac{1}{z+3} & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

we compute now,

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
f P_{H\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)} & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\frac{1}{z+3} & 0
\end{array}\right)\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*} P_{-} Q^{\prime \prime} \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\frac{1}{z+3} & 0
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\alpha \frac{1+z}{1-z} & \beta \\
-\bar{\beta} \frac{1+z}{1-z} & \bar{\alpha}
\end{array}\right) P_{-} Q^{\prime \prime} \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\frac{1+z}{(z+3)(1-z)} & \beta \frac{1}{z+3}
\end{array}\right) P_{-} Q^{\prime \prime} \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{1-z}-\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{z+3} & \beta \frac{1}{z+3}
\end{array}\right) P_{-} Q^{\prime \prime} \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{1-z} & 0
\end{array}\right)\binom{\bar{\alpha} \frac{1-z}{1+z}}{\hline} \frac{1-z}{1+z}
\end{array}\right)
$$

This implies

$$
\left\|f P_{H\left(Q^{\prime}\right)}\right\|^{2}=\|f\|^{2}\left\{\frac{|\alpha|^{4}}{4}+\frac{|\alpha|^{2}|\beta|^{2}}{4}\right\}=\|f\|^{2} \frac{|\alpha|^{2}}{4}\left(|\alpha|^{2}+|\beta|^{2}\right)=\|f\|^{2} \frac{|\alpha|^{2}}{4}
$$

Equivalently $\left\|f P_{H\left(Q^{*}\right)}\right\|=\|f\|(|\alpha| / 2)$. The maximal value is obtained for $|\alpha|=1$.
Using this we compute

$$
\left\|f P_{H\left(K_{l}^{e}\right) Q_{+}^{e}}\right\|^{2}=\|f\|^{2}=\frac{\|f\|^{2}}{4}=\frac{3\|f\|^{2}}{4}
$$

or $\left\|f P_{H\left(K^{e}\right) Q_{+}^{e}}\right\|=\sqrt{3}\|f\| / 2$. Thus the angle between $H\left(K_{-}^{e}\right) Q_{+}^{e}$ and $H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$ is, in this case, $\pi / 3$.

Note that

$$
\lim _{|\alpha| \rightarrow 0}\left\|H_{r}\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}(K) Q}\right\|=1
$$

but

$$
\lim _{|\alpha| \rightarrow 0} Q^{\prime \prime} \neq I
$$

Next, we show that, except when $\alpha=0$, we have $H\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \cap H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}=\{0\}$. Indeed, $f \in H\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \cap H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}$ if and only if $f \in H\left(K_{+}^{e}\right)$ and $f\left(Q^{\prime \prime}\right)^{*} \in H_{+}^{2}$. Now

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\frac{1}{z+3} & 0
\end{array}\right) \in H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}
$$

if and only if

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\frac{1}{z+3} & 0
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\alpha \frac{1+z}{1-z} & \beta \\
-\bar{\beta} \frac{1+z}{1-z} & \bar{\alpha}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\alpha \frac{1+z}{(1-z)(z+3)} & \frac{\beta}{z+3}
\end{array}\right) \in H_{+}^{2}
$$

which is the case if and only if $\alpha=0$. Therefore, for all factors $W$ of the form (215), we have $H\left(K_{+}^{e}\right) \cap H_{+}^{2} Q^{\prime \prime}=\{0\}$.

## 7. The frame space

We turn now to the analysis of a space that contains all the zero and pole information of all spectral factors of given size. We define the frame space $H_{m}^{\perp}$ of the spectral functon $\Phi$ as the span of the set $x^{m}$ of all minimal Markovian splitting subspaces associated with the set $w^{m}$ of all minimal, stable $p \times m$ spectral factors.

We start by considering a special case.
Proposition 23: Assume $\Phi$ to be rank $m_{0}$. Let $Q_{-}, Q_{+}, K_{-}, K_{+}$be the inner functions as in figure 1. Then the frame space $H_{m_{0}}^{\square}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{m_{0}}^{\square}=H_{r}\left(K_{-} Q_{+}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q_{-} K_{+}\right) \tag{216}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof: First, we compute

$$
H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \subset H_{r}(K Q ״)=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime} K_{+}\right) \subset H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime} \bar{Q} ״ K_{+}\right)=H_{r}\left(Q-K_{+}\right)
$$

and hence we get the inclusion

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bigvee H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{-} K_{+}\right) \tag{217}
\end{equation*}
$$

To prove the converse, we show that $H_{r}\left(Q_{-} K_{+}\right)$is spanned by the two Markovian splitting subspaces associated with $W_{-}$and $W_{+}$, namely $H_{r}\left(K_{-}\right) Q_{+}$and $H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)$ respectively. From Corollary 3 it follows that the projection map $H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right) \mid P_{H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)}$is injective, which means that $H_{+}^{2} K_{+} \cap H_{r}\left(Q_{+}\right)=\{0\}$. Applying Theorem 1, we have $H_{+}^{2} Q_{+}+H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)=H_{+}^{2}$. Now, we have the following direct sum decomposition

$$
H_{+}^{2} Q_{+}=\left[H_{+}^{2} K_{-} \oplus H_{r}\left(K_{-}\right)\right] Q_{+}+H_{+}^{2} K_{-} Q_{+} \oplus H_{r}\left(K_{-}\right) Q_{+}
$$

and

$$
H_{+}^{2}=H_{+}^{2} K_{-} Q_{+} \oplus H_{r}\left(K_{-} Q_{+}\right)
$$

Taken together, this implies $H_{r}\left(K_{-}\right) Q_{+}+H_{r}\left(K_{+}\right)=H_{r}\left(K_{-} Q_{+}\right)$, and so we get the inclusion

$$
\bigvee H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \supset H_{r}\left(Q_{-} K_{+}\right)
$$

The two inclusions imply the equality (216).
For the general case we will need the following lemma.

Lemma 8: Let $\mathcal{R}$ be the set of all $k \times k$ inner functions $R$ having the same set of invariant inner factors $r_{1}, \ldots, r_{k}$. We assume they are ordered so that $r_{i} \mid r_{i-1}$, and we set $r_{1}=r$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bigvee_{R \in \mathbb{R}} H_{r}(R)=H_{r}\left(r I_{k}\right) \tag{218}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof: For each $R \in \mathcal{R}$, the inner function $r$ is its minimal inner function. This of course implies the inclusion $H_{r}(R) \subset H_{r}(r I)$ and hence

$$
\bigvee_{R \in R} H_{r}(R) \subset H_{r}\left(r I_{k}\right)
$$

To see that this inclusion is actually an equality, it suffices to consider the set of all diagonal inner functions of the form $R_{\sigma}=\operatorname{diag}\left(r_{\sigma_{1}}, \ldots, r_{\sigma_{k}}\right)$ with $\sigma \in S_{k}$, i.e. a permutation. Clearly we have $R_{\sigma} \in \mathcal{R}$ and

$$
\bigvee_{\sigma} \bigvee_{k} H_{r}\left(R_{\sigma}\right)=H_{r}\left(r I_{k}\right)
$$

and hence (218) follows.
We pass on now to the general case.
Theorem 12: Let $\Phi$ be a $p \times p$, rank mospectral function. Let $r$ be the scalar minimal inner function of $Q_{+}$, or equivalently of $Q^{-}$. Then the frame space $H_{m}^{\square}$ of $\Phi$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{m}^{\square}=H_{r}\left(K-Q_{+}\right) \oplus H_{r}\left(r I_{m-m_{0}}\right) \tag{219}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof: First, we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{r}(K) Q & \subset H_{r}\left(K Q^{\prime \prime}\right)=H_{r}\left(\bar{Q}^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}\right) \\
& \subset H_{r}\left(Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime} K_{+}^{e}\right)=H_{r}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{-} K_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right) \\
& =H_{r}\left(Q_{-} K_{+}\right) \oplus H_{r}(R) \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{-} K_{+}\right) \oplus H_{r}(r I)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $\vee H_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{-} K_{+}\right) \oplus H_{r}(r I)$, i.e.

$$
H_{m}^{\square} \subset H_{r}\left(Q_{-} K_{+}\right) \oplus H_{r}(r I)=H_{m_{0}}^{\square} \oplus H_{r}\left(r I_{m-m_{0}}\right)
$$

Obviously, we have $H_{m_{0}}^{\square} \oplus\{0\} \subset H_{m}$, so it suffices to show that $V_{r}(K) Q^{\prime \prime} \pi_{\mathrm{E}}=H_{r}\left(r I_{m-m_{0}}\right)$. Choose any $R$ satisfying $R \simeq Q_{+}$. Let

$$
Q^{\prime} Q^{\prime \prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
Q_{+} & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

be a balanced factorization which, by Proposition 16, exists. Define $W=W_{-}^{e} Q^{\prime}$ and let $W=\bar{W} K$ be a DSS factorization. Now, by (103), we have $H_{r}(K) Q ״{ }^{2}=H_{r}(R)$, and an application of Lemma 8 completes the proof.

## Acknowledgments

P.A.F. holds the Earl Katz Family Chair in Algebraic System Theory and was partially supported by GIF under Grant No. I 184. A.G. was supported by CNR.

## References

Anderson, B. D. O., 1973, Algebraic properties of minimal degree spectral factors. Automatica, 9, 491-500.
Arov, D. Z., 1971, Darlington's method for dissipative systems. Doklady Akademia Nauk SSS R, 201, 559-562; English translation in Soviet Physics Doklady, 16.
Baratchart, L., and Gombani, A., 1994, A parametrization of external spectral factors. Preprints of the 10th IFAC Symposium on Identification and System Parameter Estimation, Copenhagen, vol. 2, pp. 391-396.
Beurling, A., 1949, On two problems concerning linear transformations in Hilbert space. Acta Math., 81, pp. 239-255.
Caines, P. E., and Delchamps, D., 1980, Splitting subspaces, spectral factorization and the positive real equations: structural features of the stochastic realization problem. Proceedings of the IEEE Conference on Decision and Control, pp. 358-362.
Callier, F. M., 1985, On polynomial matrix spectral factorization by symmetric root extraction. IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control, AC-30, 453-464.
Dewilde, P., 1976, Input-output description of roomy systems. SIA M Journal of Control and Optimization, 14, 712-736.
Dym, H., 1989, J-Contractive Matrix Functions, Reproducing Kernel Hilbert Spaces and Interpolation, CBMS Regional Conference Series in Mathematics, No. 71, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, R.I.
Douglas, R. G., 1966, On majorization, factorization and range inclusion of operators on Hilbert space. Proceedings of the American Mathematical Society, 17, 413-415.
Douglas, R. G., and Helton, J. W., 1973, Inner dilations of analytic matrix functions and Darlington synthesis. Acta Scientarum Mathematicarum (Szeged), 34, 61-67.
Douglas, R. G., Shapiro, H. S., and Shields, A. L., 1971, Cyclic vectors and invariant subspaces for the bookward shift. Annales Institute Fourier, Grenoble, 20, 37-76.
Faurre, P., 1976, Réalizations markoviennes de processus stationaires, INRIA Rapport de Recherche n.13, March 1973.
Faurre, P., Clerget, M., and Germain, F., 1979, Operateurs Rationnels Positifs (Dunod: Paris).
Ferrante, A., Michaletzky, G., and Pavon, M., 1993, Parametrization of all minimal square spectral factors. Systems \& Control Letters, 21, 249-254.
Finesso, L., and Picci, G., 1982, A characterization of minimal spectral factors. IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control, AC-27, 122-127.
Fuhrmann, P. A., 1975, On Hankel operator ranges, meromorphic pseudo-continuation and factorization of operator valued analytic functions. Journal of the London Mathematical Society (2) 13, 323-327.
Fuhrmann, P. A., 1976, Algebraic system theory: An analyst's point of view. Journal of the Franklin Institute, 301, 521-540.
Fuhrmann, P. A., 1981a, Duality in polynomial models with some applications to geometric control theory. IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control, AC-26, 284-295.
Fuhrmann, P. A., 1981b, Linear Systems and Operators in Hilbert Space (New York: McGraw-Hill).
Fuhrmann, P. A., 1989, Elements of factorization theory from a polynomial point of view, in H. Nijmeijer, J. M. S. Schumacher (Eds) Three Decades of Mathemtical System Theory. A Collection of Surveys at the Occasion of the Fiftieth Birthday of Jan C. Willems. Lecture Notes in Control and Information Sciences Vol. 135 (Berlin: Springer Verlag).
Fuhrmann, P. A., 1995, On the characterization and parametrization of minimal spectral factors. Journal of Mathematical Systems, Estimation and Control, 5, 383-444.
Fuhrmann, P. A., 1998, Geometric control revisited (in preparation).
Fuhrmann, P. A., and Helmke, U., 1997, A homeomorphism between observable pairs and conditioned invariant subspaces. System \& Control Letters, 30, 217-223.

Fuhrmann, P. A., and Willems, J. C., 1979, Factorization indices at infinity for rational matrix functions. Integral Equations and Operator Theory, 2, 287-301.
Gohberg, I. C., and Feldman, I. A., 1971, Convolution Equations and Projection Methods for their Solution (Moscow: Nauka). English translation: American Mathematical Society, Providence (1974).
Gombani, A., and Fuhrmann, P. A., 1998, On a connection between spectral factorization and geometric control theory (in preparation).
Halmos, P. R., 1958, Finite Dimensional Vector Spaces (Princeton: Van Nostrand).
Halmos, P. R., 1961, Shifts on Hilbert spaces. Journal Reine Angewandte Mathematik, 208, 102-112.
Hofffman, K., 1962, Banach Spaces of Analytic Functions (Englewood Cliffs: Prentice Hall).
Lax, P. D., 1959, Translation invariant subspaces. Acta Mathematica, 101, 163-178.
Lax, P. D., and Phillips, R. S., 1967, Scattering Theory (New York: Academic Press).
Lindquist, A., and Picci, G., 1979 a, On the stochastic realization problem. SIA M Journal of Control Optimization, 17, 365-389.
Lindquist, A., and Picci, G., 1979 b, Realization theory for multivariate stationary gaussian processes I: State space construction. Proceedings of 4th MTNS, Delft, Holland, pp. 140-148.
Lindquist, A., and Picci, G., 1979 c, Realization theory for multivariate gaussian processes II: State space construction. Proceedings of the 2nd Conference on Information Sciences and Systems, Patras, Greece (Boston: Reidel), pp. 108-129.
Lindquist, A., and Picci, G., 1985 a, Realization theory for multivariable stationary Gaussian processes. SIA M Journal of Control Optimization, 23, 809-857.
Lindquist, A., and Picci, G., 1985 b, Forward and backward semimartingale representations for stationary increment processes. Stochastics 15, 1-50.
Lindquist, A., and Picci, G., 1991, A geometric approach to modelling and estimation of linear stochastic systems. Journal of Mathematical Systems, Estimation and Control, 1, 241-333.
Lindquist, A., Michaletzky, G., and Picci, G., 1995, Zeros of spectral factors, the geometry of splitting subspaces and the algebraic Riccati inequality. SIA M Journal of Control Optimization, 33, 365-401.
Nikolskit, N. K., 1985, Treatise on the Shift Operator (Berlin: Springer-Verlag).
Pavon, M., 1994, On the parametrization of nonsquare spectral factors. In U. Helmke, R. Mennicken and J. Saurer (Eds) Systems and Networks: Mathematical Theory and Applications, vol. II. Mathematical Research, vol. 79 (Berlin: Akademie Verlag), pp. 413-416.
Picci, G., and Pinz oni, S., 1994, Acausal models of stationary processes. Linear Algebra and its Applications, 205-206, 997-1043.
Rozanov, Yu. A., 1967, Stationary Random Processes (San Francisco: Holden-Day).
Ruckebusch, G., 1980 a, Theorie geometrique de la representations markovienne. These de doctorat d'etat, Univ. Paris VI.
Ruckebusch, G., 1980 b, Theorie geometrique de la representation Markovienne. Annales Institute Henry Poincare, XVI, 225-297.
Scherer, C., 1991, The solution set of the Algebraic Riccati Equation and the Algebraic Riccati Inequality. Linear Algebra and its Applications, 153, 99-122.
Shayman, M. A., 1983, Geometry of the algebraic Riccati equation, Part I. SIA M Journal of Control Optimization, 21, 375-394.
Willems, J. C., 1971, Least squares stationary optimal control and the algebraic Riccati equation. IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control, AC-16, 621-634.


[^0]:    * Dedicated to Roger Brockett on the occasion of his $60^{\text {th }}$ birthday.

    Received in final form 16 March 1998. Communicated by Professor V. Kučera.
    $\dagger$ Department of Mathematics, Ben-Gurion University of the Negev, Beer Sheva, Israel.
    $\ddagger$ LADSEB-CNR, Corso Stati Uniti 4, 35127 Padova, Italy.

